

Equipped Through **Bible Study Skills**

Version 1.0

Greg Nancarrow
Lynn Nancarrow
and
Linda Winkleman

Equippers Group International
www.equippersgroup.org

Equipped Through **BIBLE STUDY SKILLS**

©2005 Greg Nancarrow, Lynn Nancarrow & Linda Winkleman

First printing – June 2005

Published by:
Equippers Group International
P.O. Box 399
Euless, TX 76039 USA
e-mail: info@equippersgroup.org
www.equippersgroup.org

All Scriptures are quoted from the HOLY BIBLE, NEW INTERNATIONAL VERSION® 1973, 1978, 1984 by International Bible Society, unless stated otherwise in the text.

ISBN 0-9763463-1-1

Table of Contents

Acknowledgement	v
Introduction	vii
Lesson 1 Effective Bible Study	1
Lesson 2 Observation: Seeing the Whole Book	17
Lesson 3 Observation: Seeing the Parts	31
Lesson 4 Observation: Seeing the Details	51
Lesson 5 Interpretation: Defined	65
Lesson 6 Interpretation: Types of Biblical Writing – Part 1	79
Lesson 7 Interpretation: Types of Biblical Writing – Part 2	93
Lesson 8 Interpretation: Compare, Define, Consult	105
Lesson 9 Interpretation: Avoiding Error	123
Lesson 10 Application: Defined	143
Lesson 11 Application: Identify	157
Lesson 12 Application: Reflect	175
Lesson 13 Application: Respond	189

Appendices

Appendix 1 Important Words – Glossary	209
Appendix 2 Additional Resources	217
1. How to become a Christian	218
2. How to look up a verse	220
3. How Bible books are abbreviated in this manual	221
4. How to choose a Bible	222
5. How to read through the Bible in one year	225
6. How to chart the topics of a Bible book	231
7. How to use various concordances	233
Appendix 3 Bible Text Worksheet, 2 Timothy 1-3	237
Appendix 4 Answer Key for Selected Activities	245
Appendix 5 Equippers Group International	263

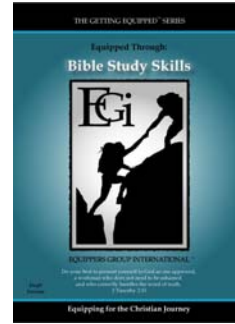
Acknowledgement

This manual was created by a team of volunteer advisors, editors, illustrators, technical consultants, usability testers and writers who sacrificially contributed their unique skills, gifts and talents. Our thanks are extended to the following people and their families who offered support while they volunteered their time and services.

- **Advisors:** Rev. Joseph Hughes and Jo Hughes
- **Editors:** Marjorie King and Carole Newton
- **Illustrator:** Joanna Smith
- **Technical consultant:** Dr. Andrew Rankin
- **Usability testers:** Martha Cobb, Carole Newton and Carol Maughan.
- **Writers:** Greg Nancarrow, Lynn Nancarrow, Linda Winkleman

Our thanks also extend to those who have prayed for this writing project. It has taken many, many hours of writing, editing and perfecting to get to the place of publication. Most of all, we thank the Holy Spirit for His guidance on this very important subject.

Introduction



Objectives

- To gain understanding of the purpose of this manual
- To understand how the book was designed
- To gain insights into how to teach and use this manual

Key Verse

All Scripture is God-breathed and is useful for teaching, rebuking, correcting and training in righteousness, so that the man of God may be thoroughly equipped for every good work. (2 Timothy 3:16-17)

Mission of Equippers Group International (EGI)

To provide user-friendly Biblical training and materials to under-resourced parts of the Body of Christ so God's people are equipped to be fully functioning followers and servants of Jesus Christ.

Bible Study Skills is essential in fulfilling this mission statement. Our hope and prayer is that after students complete this manual they will:

- know how to study the Bible inductively.
- have gained **steps** and **skills** to observe, interpret and apply Scripture.
- have learned principles of balanced Bible study.
- have useful **tools** for a life-long habit of Bible study.
- gain a desire to study the Scripture as well as teach it.
- be grounded in balanced Biblical truths so that church leaders are able to protect young and untaught believers from error.
- complete a thorough study of 2 Timothy.

A. Why write another manual on Bible study?

Many scholarly books have been written in the western world about how to study the Bible. This manual was created not because it contains new information or an improved approach to the topic. The authors desire only to help fill an urgent need in the non-western mission fields of the world. In vast areas where the church is growing quickly, at least 80% of the pastors have never had any Bible school or formal training. Also, 95% of the emerging christian church leadership has little or no training materials in their own language. This urgent need is for materials that are written in basic and concise language, making it easy to translate.

EGL was established to help meet this need for training materials. Of all the elements of training needed by growing believers, EGL considers none more important than clear instructions on how to conduct lively, balanced and personal Bible study. It is from this foundation that all other disciplines of the Christian life should be based and tested.

B. Overview of the manual's content

An overview of the content covered in this manual are represented in picture form on the following page. The Bible, of course, is the mine from which we dig. The discovery method of Bible study has proven to be the most trustworthy way to understand Scripture.

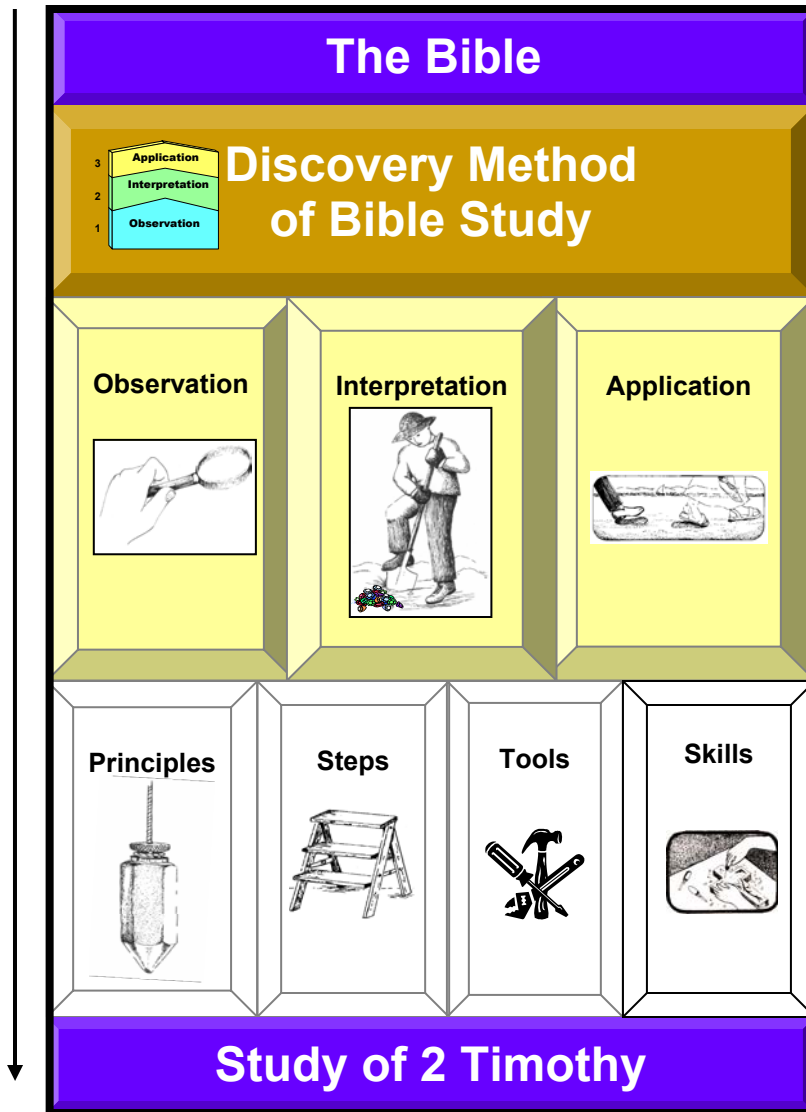
Note: When you see underlined words or phrases, these words and phrases are defined in Appendix 1, Important Words – Glossary, found in the back of the manual.

The discovery study method consists of three phases: Observation, Interpretation and Application. Each phase is indicated by a specific picture, as illustrated in Diagram 0.1. Each phase is taught through the following categories of study:

- Principles
- Steps
- Tools
- Skills

The book of 2 Timothy is used to practice that which is taught in these lessons.

Diagram 0.1 Overview of the manual's content



C. Manual objectives

1) Teach discovery method of Bible study

The discovery method of Bible study is introduced in Lesson 1. Table 0.1 gives a definition of each phase and the lesson in which it is taught.

Phase	Answers the question:	Taught in lessons
Observation	What does the Bible say?	2-4
Interpretation	What does the Bible mean?	5-9
Application	What does the Bible mean to me?	10-13

2) Teach the principles of discovery Bible study



In this manual, the picture used to represent principles is a plumb line. A plumb line is a weight that hangs on a string. It is a tool used to create a perfectly vertical line. It is useful when building a house. Walls, windows and doorways are usually built so that their sides are vertical. A plumb line can be helpful as a reference to do this. The picture on the right shows something that is not plumb, or not vertical.



The plumb line is an excellent picture to symbolize principles. Principles are guidelines that keep the student focused on the best methods to observe, interpret and apply Scripture. Principles also help the student maintain a balanced understanding of God and His message which is in harmony with the whole Bible.

Out of line

3) Teach the steps of discovery Bible study



Steps are indicated by a picture of a step ladder. Table 0.2 lists all of the steps of discovery Bible study.

Table 0.2 Steps of Observation, Interpretation, Application	
Steps of Observation	
Step 1	Seeing the whole book
Step 2	Seeing the parts
Step 3	Seeing the details
Steps of Interpretation	
Step 1	Identify the Bible texts that are not understood
Step 2	Establish the various contexts: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Historical context • Grammatical & structural context • Types of Biblical Writing
Step 3	Compare with other Scriptures
Step 4	Define words
Step 5	Consult other resources
Step 6	Conclude: Decide the meaning
Steps of Application	
Step 1	Identify the appropriate applications
Step 2	Connect your life to Bible truths
Step 3	Decide to take action (repentance)
Step 4	Watch for the transformation

4) Teach skills and tools of observation, interpretation and application



The picture used to represent a “skill” shows an artist carving a wooden cross. In his hands are the tools of his craft. It takes practice to become a skilled wood carver. To correctly study the Bible, one must also acquire skills through knowledge and practice.



The picture that represents a “tool” consists of a hammer, screwdriver and wrench. To properly build or repair things, one needs the right tools. Understanding the Bible also requires the right tools.

Table 0.3 provides a list of the skills and tools taught in this manual. Some tools are worksheets on which students can write observations and

answer questions of Bible texts. Other tools are instructions on how to use reference books and other resources.

Table 0.3 Skills and associated tools taught in this manual		
Skill	Associated tool	Lesson
Observation skills and associated tools		
Careful reading	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All observation tools help develop skillful reading. 	2, 3, 4
Fact finding	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Book Summary Worksheet Tool 	2
Identifying the context	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Book Summary Worksheet Tool 	2
Questioning the text	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Paragraph Analysis Worksheet Tool 	3
Identifying the structure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Outline Tool Paragraph Analysis Worksheet Tool 	3
Identifying signpost words	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Bible Text Worksheet Tool 	3, 4
Identifying important repeated words and phrases	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Bible Text Worksheet Tool 	4
Creating lists	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Bible Text Worksheet Tool 	4
Interpretation skills and associated tools		
Finding the author's meaning	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All 	2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8
Identifying and understanding literature types	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Knowledge and analytical thinking 	6, 7
Comparison – studying words and topics	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Dictionaries Concordances Bible Commentaries Various Bible versions 	8
Recognizing interpretation errors	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> All 	9
Application skills and associated tools		
Applying the Scriptures	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Discovery Worksheet 	5, 10, 11, 12, 13
Meditation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Journaling 	12
Memorization	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Memorization helps 	12

D. Manual's learning aids

1) Objectives

The objectives of each lesson are written from the student's perspective. Objectives answer the question: What will I learn in this lesson? They include:

- Learning objectives
- Practice objectives usually associated with study tools
- 2 Timothy study objectives where applicable

2) Key Verse



The key verse sets a Scriptural foundation for the lesson. The key verse is indicated by a picture of a key.



3) Bible quotes

The English version of this manual uses the New International Version of the Bible. Using other recognized translations is also encouraged. Bible quotes with references will look like this.

*The Lord be with your spirit. Grace be with you.
(2 Timothy 4:22)*

When explaining a topic, sometimes additional reference verses are given. They are noted as “ Read” or as “ See also.” These verses may be read during class or after.

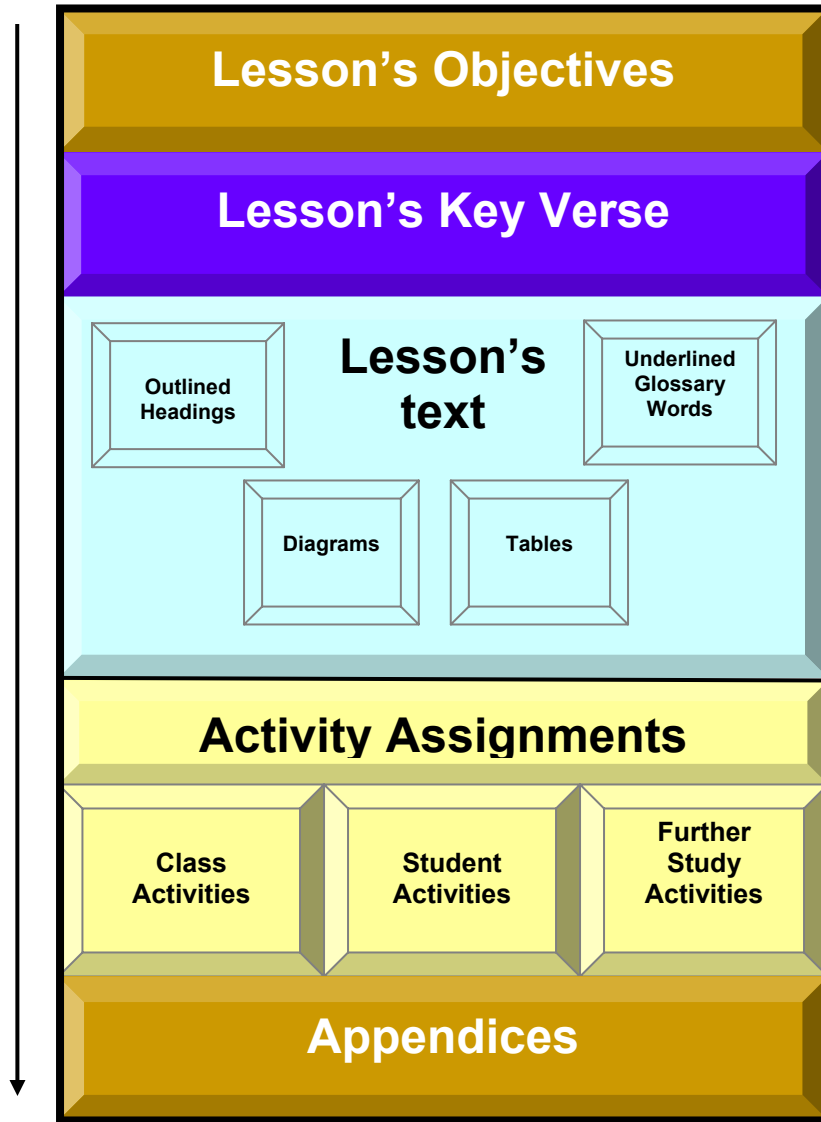
4) Tables

Tables are used in this manual because they have proven to be an easy way to view and understand long lists of information. Tables are numbered using first the lesson number, then the order of appearance in the lesson.

Table 0.4 Example of a table

	Example
--	---------

Diagram 0.2 Manual's learning aids



5) Diagrams

Diagrams are drawings or illustrations that represent a concept. Some diagrams are boxes with text in them that display information. Diagrams are numbered with the lesson number and then the order of appearance in the lesson.

Diagram 0.3 Example



6) Activity assignments

The last part of the lesson is represented by the picture on the left. Practice activities are designed to help students remember and use the ideas and concepts taught in the lesson. They also give students the opportunity to study the book of 2 Timothy for themselves. Each lesson has three levels of activity assignments:

- **Class Activity**
These activities are designed for classes that have a teacher and more than one student. They give students an opportunity to interact with other students through the discussion questions. The class activities are designed to help students practice using the tools and skills presented in the lesson. It is important that the teacher knows whether the students really understand what was taught. Class activities are a way for teachers to determine the level of student understanding. When not using this manual in a class, a student can still benefit from doing class activities.
- **Student Activity**
The student activities are to be completed outside of the classroom. They are designed to help students practice the principles, steps, tools and skills presented in the lesson. These outside activities will be most effective if they are reviewed in class before moving to the next lesson.
- **Further Study Activity**
These activities are designed for more advanced teaching situations such as a Bible school. However, any student who completes the “Further Study Activity” will benefit from it. These activities ensure that the book of 2 Timothy is thoroughly studied by the end of this manual.

7) Important words – glossary

The important words and phrases that appear in Appendix 1, Important Words – Glossary, at the back of this manual are underlined. The first time a glossary word appears in a lesson, it will be underlined. For example, the word Observation is an important word and appears in the glossary.

8) Appendices

Each appendix contains additional material for students who wish to know more about a subject.

- **Appendix 1 – Important Words – Glossary**
The glossary contains words that are defined for the students. They are usually key concepts or words used that are not considered basic language.
- **Appendix 2 – Additional Resources**
 1. How to become a Christian
 2. How to look up a verse
 3. How the Bible books are abbreviated in this manual
 4. How to choose a Bible
 5. How to read through the Bible in one year
 6. How to chart the topics of a Bible book
 7. How to use various concordances
- **Appendix 3 – Bible Text Worksheet, 2 Timothy 1-3**
The Bible Text Worksheet is the Bible text of 2 Timothy 1-3 written out in such a way that Bible students can be comfortable writing on the text. It is used in Lessons 3 and 4.
- **Appendix 4 – Answer Key for Selected Activities**
The author's answers to some lesson activities are included in this appendix.
- **Appendix 5 – Equippers Group International**

E. To the teacher

This manual was designed to be used in different learning environments. Teachers are encouraged to adapt a method of teaching to accommodate the unique needs of the students. Consider the local economic, religious and political situations, learning styles and culture of the students. The authors are aware that Bible study reference books such as a concordance, Bible dictionary or Bible commentary are not

available in all learning environments. In lessons that discuss these resources, teachers should explain that effective study does not depend upon these materials. The authors have tried to include everything necessary to study 2 Timothy without the help of additional books.

1) Preparing to teach the lessons

The teacher should prepare the lesson before class begins. A good teacher prepares a lesson as one making a soup: One starts with the liquid, adds ingredients, lets it simmer, tastes it and then adds spices. Lessons that have been prepared well in advance allow the Holy Spirit time to add “spice” to the lesson. The main ingredients in lesson preparation are study and prayer.

a. Study the lesson

1. Complete each lesson as if you were the student. Read through the lesson, looking up all the verses. Complete all activity assignments and worksheets before preparing to teach your class.
2. Consider the special needs of your students. Anticipate possible problems or questions that may come up.
3. It is important that you have adequate time to teach the principles, steps, skills and tools for each phase of discovery Bible study. Some difficult lessons could be divided into two class sessions.
4. Prioritize the truths in each lesson in the event that you run out of time. Ask yourself: If a student leaves the class with only three truths, what should they be? Prepare your lesson to assure that important areas are covered first.
5. Consider how you will use the Activity Assignments in class. Leave enough time for them. Feel free to add discussion questions that would be helpful to your students. When thinking about the activity assignments, review the “Student Activity” or “Further Study” assignments from the previous week’s lesson.
6. Determine how you will organize the lesson. The presentation of the lesson’s content should be a blend of the following:
 - Review of previous lesson or lessons
 - Lecture that explains the key points of the lesson

- Class discussion
 - Practice using the skills and tools in the class activities.
7. Consider examples that are culturally relevant to your students. The authors' goal was to write *Bible Study Skills* without being specific to any one culture. We hope that teachers will provide examples and illustrations that are meaningful to their students. Attempt to make these lessons more colorful through your insights and life experiences.

b. Pray

1. Pray specifically for those who will attend your class. Pray that the Lord Jesus through the Holy Spirit will teach them what they need to know.
2. Ask Jesus what He wants you to learn from the material.
3. Ask Jesus to give you the wisdom to know what parts of the lesson should be emphasized in class.
4. Ask Jesus to give you examples of how these truths are relevant to you and those in your community.

2) Who should teach this manual?

A teacher is one of the instruments God uses to instruct His people. The following qualifications are to be used as guidelines. Ultimately, the Holy Spirit is the true teacher of His people. The teacher is one who:

- is a Christian. (See “How to become a Christian” in Appendix 2, Additional Resources, and a definition of “Christian” in Appendix 1, Important Words – Glossary to understand what this means.)
- continually studies the Scriptures. Jesus calls His followers “disciples,” which literally means “learners.”
- is committed to the Lordship of Jesus Christ.
- teaches in such a way to encourage students to be followers of Jesus and not followers of the teacher.
- presents the Scriptures accurately, never distorting them for personal reasons.
- depends on the Holy Spirit, the true teacher, to give insight and knowledge to the students.

- avoids pride in their own skills or accomplishments.
- attempts to teach in a way that encourages students to teach others.
Paul told Timothy:

And the things you have heard me say in the presence of many witnesses entrust to reliable men who will also be qualified to teach others. (2 Timothy 2:2)

It is every believer's right and privilege to know and understand the Scriptures. This is the main reason we wrote this manual.

F. Recommended books for further study

The following are recommended resources for further information on Bible study.

1. *1 and 2 Timothy and Titus: A Self Study Guide*, Irving Jensen, (The Moody Bible Institute of Chicago, Illinois), 1973.
2. *An Introduction to Hermeneutics, Understanding and Applying the Bible*, J. Robertson McQuilkin, (Moody Press, Chicago, Illinois), 1983.
3. *Dynamic Bible Study Methods – 12 Practical Approaches To Searching The Scriptures*, Rick Warren, (Victor Books, Wheaton, Illinois), 1989.
4. *Living by the Book*, Howard G. Hendricks and William D. Hendricks, (Moody Press, Chicago, Illinois), 1991.
5. *How to Read The Bible For All Its Worth*, Gordon Fee, (Zondervan Corp), 1993.
6. *How to Study Your Bible*, Kay Arthur, Precept Ministries, (Published by Harvest House Publications, Eugene, Oregon), 1994.

EFFECTIVE BIBLE STUDY

Objectives

- Learn why effective Bible study is so important
- Be introduced to various methods of Bible study
- Learn about the discovery method of Bible study
- Read the book of 2 Timothy



Key Verse

*Do your best to present yourself to God as one approved, a workman who does not need to be ashamed and who correctly handles the word of truth.
(2 Timothy 2:15)*

Introduction to the Bible

A. The Bible is like no other book

The Bible is like no other book because its author is God. He inspired certain people with the words He wanted to say, so each book within the Bible is influenced with that writer's personality. The message that each

writer or speaker gives, however, comes from God. In the Bible, God reveals Himself and His ways. 📖 Read 2 Timothy 3:16 and 2 Peter 1:21.

Some important facts about the Bible are:

- It contains some of the oldest books in the world.
- It was written on the continents of Asia, Europe and Africa.
- The original languages of the Bible are Hebrew, Aramaic (Chaldee) and Greek.
- It took 1,500 years to write – from the time of the first words in Genesis until the last words of Revelation.
- Those who wrote the words came from various times in history, cultures and backgrounds. Among the writers were kings, shepherds, prophets, fishermen, doctors, tax collectors and farmers.
- It contains various kinds of literature which include law, history, poetry, wisdom, prophecy and letters.
- Over centuries these books have been copied faithfully by people who believed that they were the most important writings of all time.
- Over the years, God's people recognized that only these 66 books had really come from Him. All of the writings known to be from God ended around 90-95 A.D. By the end of the fourth century, these books were gathered into the "canon" ('measuring stick' in the Latin language). Since then, believers have enjoyed great benefits from them.
- The Bible is truly the Word of God. It is perfect because He is perfect. For this reason, no one should ever add or take away from these words today.

All these facts make a thorough study of the Bible exciting and challenging. This manual was created to help every believer have:

- Increased desire to study the Bible
- Knowledge about the Bible and the discovery method of study
- Tools and activities that will develop Bible study skills and encourage application of its truths

B. The Bible's organization

The word, Bible, comes from the Greek word, *biblia*, meaning "books." The Bible is actually a compilation of 66 separate books. Because God is the author, all 66 books are in harmony with the Bible's one central purpose and message.

1) The Old and New Testaments

The Bible is divided into two sections, the Old and New Testaments.

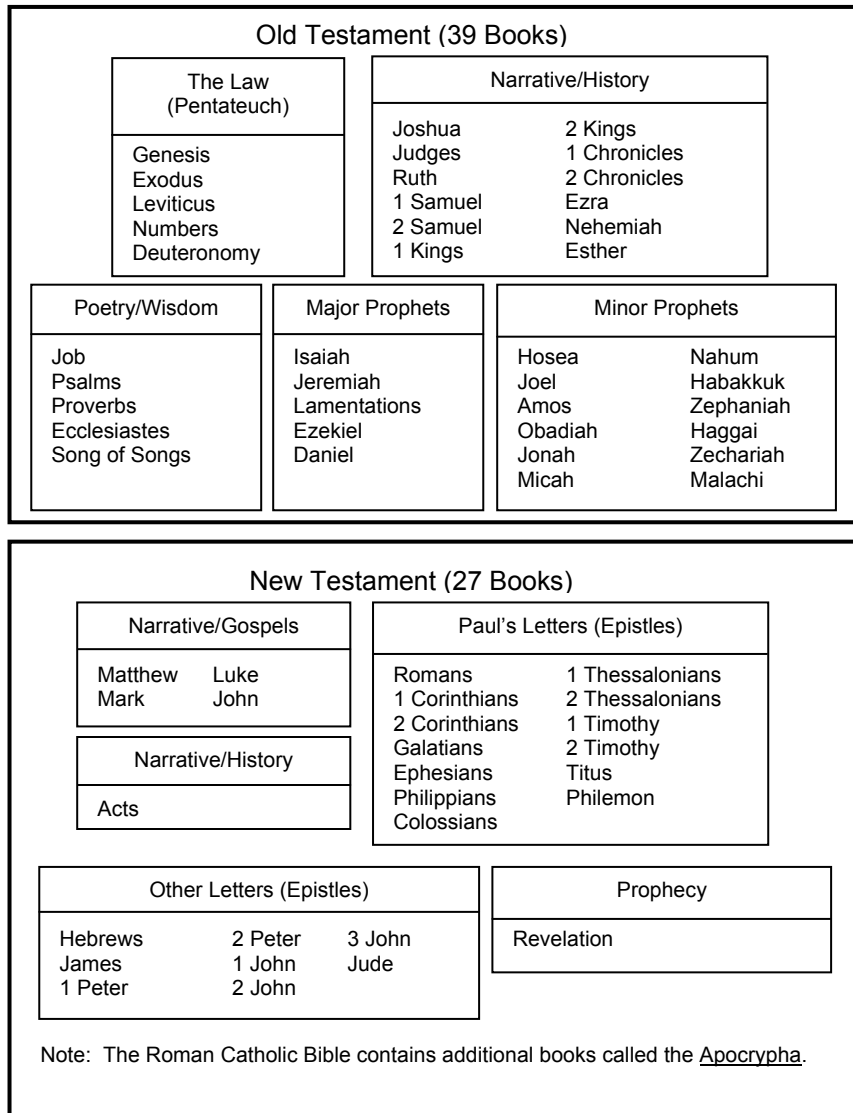
Old Testament – The Old Testament covers the period prior to the birth of Jesus. There are 39 books in the Old Testament, which are written in Hebrew and Aramaic. The last book of the Old Testament, Malachi, was written 400 years before the coming of Jesus.

New Testament – The New Testament covers the period from the conception of Jesus until the end of time. There are 27 books of the New Testament, which are written in Greek.

2) Types of Biblical literature

The main types of writing in the Bible are law, history, poetry, words of wisdom, prophecy and letters. Diagram 1.1 identifies which books fall in each category.

Diagram 1.1 The Bible: Books categorized by type of literature



C. Benefits of the Bible

It is the responsibility of every good student to understand what God is saying to them personally. Bible study is not truly effective unless believers benefit from it as God intended. The table below lists some of these ways. This list is not in order of importance, nor does it actually include every way that believers may benefit from Scripture.




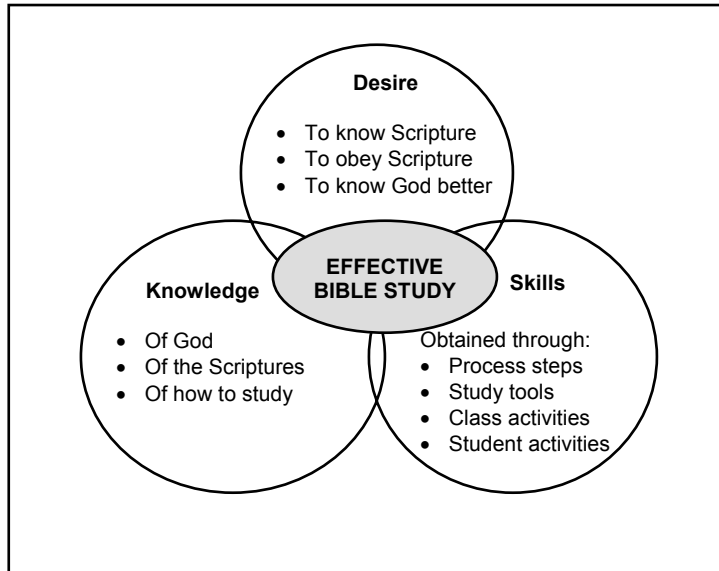
Table 1.1 God intends the Bible to:	
Be food for the souls of people	
	<i>He humbled you, causing you to hunger and then feeding you with manna, which neither you nor your fathers had known, to teach you that man does not live on bread alone but on every word that comes from the mouth of the LORD. (Deuteronomy 8:3)</i>
	 See also Psalm 119:103, Jeremiah 15:16, Matthew 4:4 and 1 Peter 2:3.
Give instructions to people on how to live	
	<i>How can a young man keep his way pure? By living according to your word. I seek you with all my heart; do not let me stray from your commands. I have hidden your word in my heart that I might not sin against you. (Psalm 119:9-11)</i>
	 See also Proverbs 6:23 and 2 Timothy 3:16-17.
Reveal to mankind who God is and what He is like	
	<i>My son, if you accept my words and store up my commands within you, turning your ear to wisdom and applying your heart to understanding, and if you call out for insight and cry aloud for understanding, and if you look for it as for silver and search for it as for hidden treasure, then you will understand the fear of the LORD and find the knowledge of God. (Proverbs 2:1-5)</i>
	 See also Psalm 119:27 and Romans 16:25-26.
Provide teaching, encouragement and hope	
	<i>For everything that was written in the past was written to teach us, so that through endurance and the encouragement of the Scriptures we might have hope. (Romans 15:4)</i>
Provide equipment needed for Christian service	
	<i>All Scripture is God-breathed and is useful for teaching, rebuking, correcting and training in righteousness, so that the man of God may be thoroughly equipped for every good work. (2 Timothy 3:16-17)</i>

Table 1.1 God intends the Bible to:	
Show the way of salvation	
	<i>And how from infancy you have known the holy Scriptures, which are able to make you wise for salvation through faith in Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 3:15)</i>
	<i>For you have been born again, not of perishable seed, but of imperishable, through the living and enduring word of God. (1 Peter 1:23)</i>
	📖 See also Psalm 119:81, 166 and John 20:31.
Provide cleansing for the sinful souls of mankind	
	<i>... just as Christ loved the church and gave himself up for her to make her holy, cleansing her by the washing with water through the word. (Ephesians 5:25-26)</i>
	📖 See also Psalm 119:9, John 15:3, John 17:17, 1 Peter 1:22 and 2 Peter 1:3-4.
Be a powerful weapon and tool for the believer	
	<i>Take the helmet of salvation and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God. (Ephesians 6:17)</i>
	<i>For the word of God is living and powerful, and sharper than any two-edged sword, piercing even to the division of soul and spirit, and of joints and marrow, and is a discerner of the thoughts and intents of the heart. (Hebrews 4:12 NKJV) ¹</i>
	📖 See also 2 Peter 1:3-4.

What is effective Bible study?

Diagram 1.2 shows that desire, knowledge and skills are very important in effective Bible study. Effective Bible study occurs when a believer possesses these qualities.

Diagram 1.2 Effective Bible Study



A. Effective Bible study requires desire

1) Desire to know Scripture

Like all other pursuits in life, effective Bible study is done best by those with a desire to do it well. The Spirit of God within us creates a strong desire to know the life-giving Words of God. Believers naturally crave God's truth like a newborn baby craves milk.

Like newborn babies, crave pure spiritual milk, so that by it you may grow up in your salvation, now that you have tasted that the Lord is good. (1 Peter 2:2-3)

📖 See also Psalm 84:2.

A comparison between two things that have similar qualities is a metaphor, or a word picture. The Bible uses metaphors when it compares itself to milk, meat, bread, honey, fire and light. Every Biblical metaphor is given to help the student understand an important truth. Comparisons with food illustrate that regular study of Scripture is as important to a believer as daily meals. Job was a man who knew this.



**The Holy Bible is
spiritual milk and bread**

I have not departed from the commands of his lips; I have treasured the words of his mouth more than my daily bread. (Job 23:12)

God's Word is spiritual food for every believer. Like a child who begins with liquid food and then progresses to solid food, so should a young Christian. Our understanding of Bible truth is basic in the beginning. As we learn and obey these basic truths (liquid food) in our lives, we begin to mature spiritually and are able to move on into deeper truths (solid food).

But solid food is for the mature, who by constant use have trained themselves to distinguish good from evil. (Hebrews 5:14)

Every believer needs to develop the habit of regular Bible study. This is the only kind of diet that can bring spiritual health and maturity. One of the goals of this manual is to increase the student's desire for effective Biblical study. Another goal is to help students to make study of the Bible a life-long habit.

2) Desire to obey Scripture and to know God better

By itself, the value of Biblical knowledge is limited. To gain full understanding of truths uncovered in Scripture, they must be obeyed and practiced in daily life. In this way, one can experience true fellowship with God and with other believers who live in His truth.

If we claim to have fellowship with him yet walk in the darkness, we lie and do not live by the truth. But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of Jesus, his Son, purifies us from all sin. (1 John 1:6-7)

What motivates people to take the time to carefully read, study and obey Scripture? Hopefully, it is a heartfelt response to the love and mercy they receive from Jesus. As we learn more about our amazing God, a desire is created in us to please Him and an unwillingness to disappoint Him. Our desire to know His Words, and our obedience to what we learn, is how we please Him most. As people obey Scripture, they will know God better.

Paul is a believer's example of desiring to know Jesus as he wrote in his letter to the Philippians. 📖 Read Philippians 3:8-10.

What is more, I consider everything a loss compared to the surpassing greatness of knowing Christ Jesus my Lord, ... I want to know Christ and the power of his resurrection and the fellowship of sharing in his sufferings, becoming like him in his death, (Philippians 3:8, 10)

The Bible is the source of learning about God and coming to know Him deeply.

B. Effective Bible study requires knowledge

The world is filled with information that leads to knowledge about many things. Biblical knowledge is the most valuable of all because it can lead the seeker to eternal life with God.

1) Effective study begins with becoming God's child

The key to understanding the Bible is to know the Author. This happens only after we are "born again" through repentance and faith in Jesus. (John 3:1-16) At this time, God's Holy Spirit makes His home in our hearts and we truly become His children forever. (📖 See John 3:1-16, 14:23-26 and Ephesians 1:13-14.) Only then can we really begin to learn more about this spiritual book. Without His help we could never hope to understand all that God has for us in its pages.

The man without the Spirit does not accept the things that come from the Spirit of God, for they are foolishness to him, and he

cannot understand them, because they are spiritually discerned. (1 Corinthians 2:14)

If you have never asked Jesus to be your Lord and Savior, refer to Appendix 2 for more information on how to become a Christian. You, too, can be born again!

2) Effective study begins with the Scripture

Scripture is like a wonderful new world that God has created and gives to believers. Some places are much like the places near our own homes. They seem familiar the very first time that we see them. Many other places, however, are strange and new. There are vast wildernesses of mountains and oceans, deep forests and deserts, swamps and grassy plains. The only way to understand this new world is to begin to travel through it, again and again. We must make maps and take notes about what we see and learn. Only then will it become our home, a place that we know and love. We will be able to talk about it with confidence to others who are curious.

The Bible contains this wonderful and challenging new landscape. It is the only error-free source of spiritual knowledge on Earth. Scripture is the only reliable reference for judging what is good and bad, wise and foolish, truth and error. To reach their full spiritual potential, every believer must journey through God's written words continually and find opportunities to share them with others. Paul devoted his life to this task, and said:

For I have not hesitated to proclaim to you the whole will of God. (Acts 20:27)

Believers must know God's will for themselves in order to effectively share it with others. 📖 Read 2 Timothy 2:14-15.

3) Effective study begins with knowing how to study well

The purpose of this manual is to equip believers with the tools and skills they need to effectively study Scripture. It is designed to teach the discovery method of Bible study. This method is also called inductive Bible study. It has been developed by many gifted believers over the centuries. Examining the Scriptures using this method demands patience and perseverance, but it will reward the student with a good understanding of the Scriptures.

When this manual is successfully completed, students will know the following:

- Principles, steps, tools and skills of **observing** a Bible text
- Principles, steps, tools and skills of **interpreting** a Bible text
- Principles, steps, tools and skills of **applying** a Bible Text
- Practice **using** the discovery method to study the book of 2Timothy

C. Effective Bible study requires “skills”

God helps us as we explore the Bible. We will sense His guiding hand often as we study His Words. However, He does not give immediate understanding of everything we read. He wants believers to exercise the new nature He has given them. We must develop both the skill to understand His message and the strength of character to apply it to our daily lives. God wants His children to be spiritually strong, mature and able to do His will.

A good craftsman needs the right tools and is responsible to develop the skills to use them well. Likewise, good Bible students must obtain the right tools and skills in order to discover all of the wisdom and blessing that God has for them in Scripture.

Someone has said: “If you give a man a fish, you have supplied him with one meal; but, if you teach him how to catch fish, he may feed himself for a lifetime.” The same is true with effective Bible study. You can feed yourself spiritually for a lifetime when you learn and practice the skills given in this manual. It is not good to rely only on others for your spiritual needs. God desires that all His children learn to know His Words for themselves, like the Bereans.



Now the Bereans were of more noble character than the Thessalonians, for they received the message with great eagerness and examined the Scriptures every day to see if what Paul said was true. (Acts 17:11)

Let us be like the wise Bereans, who did not accept everything taught by others without question. Although they were eager to hear good teaching, they skillfully studied God’s Words to determine whether it was really truth or error. Millions of people in the world become deceived by false

teachings because they do not study the Bible correctly for themselves. Knowing and applying correct Biblical teachings (doctrine) gives us the ability to distinguish truth from lies, so that we are not easily fooled.

Bible study methods

The way students study the Bible affects how well they will be able to interpret and apply it. The study method used can mean the difference between truth and error, growth and stagnation, spiritual life and spiritual destruction.

There are basically two ways of reading the Bible: unplanned and a planned, step-by-step method.

A. Unplanned Bible study

1) Casual

All Bible reading has value because it is a discovery of God's Word. Casual Bible reading, however, cannot be considered a "method" because it is usually done without a plan or a goal. It usually occurs when the Bible is opened and read at random.



2) Devotional

Devotional Bible study emphasizes personal application of Bible truths and should be part of every believer's private discipline. It is usually a combination of Bible reading, meditation, worship and prayer. Devotional study is not usually considered systematic, but can be if the purpose is to read the whole Bible over a period of time. Appendix 2 contains a plan to help students read the whole Bible in one year. It is very important for believers to have times set aside for devotional Bible study.

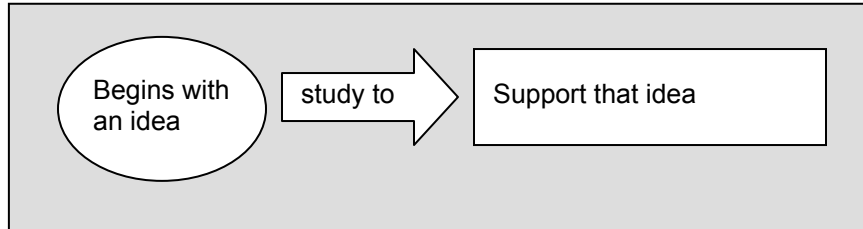
B. Planned Bible Study

There are two approaches to planned Bible study: method of proof (deductive) and the method of discovery (inductive).

1) Method of proof

In the proof method (deductive), a student of Scripture begins with an idea and then tries to prove that it is true. For example, consider the idea that God created the world. A student would search the Bible for Scriptures that support that idea. Anything that did not support it would be ignored.

Diagram 1.2 Method of proof

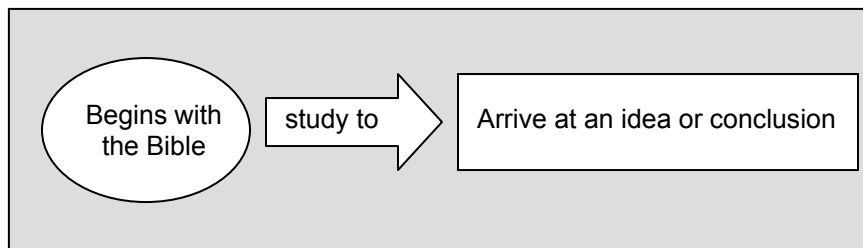


In this case, the idea happens to be true, but it is easy to see the dangers of this method. If the starting idea is false, there is nothing in this method of study that could correct it.

2) Method of discovery

The discovery method of Bible study (inductive) begins with a search for facts in the Bible. When handled carefully using the tools of discovery study, these facts will lead to a clear understanding of Bible truth.

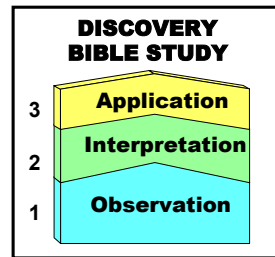
Diagram 1.3 Method of discovery



Truth is drawn from Scripture and not from the student. Correctly drawn conclusions using the discovery method have the authority of God's Word behind them.

a. Parts of discovery Bible study

The discovery method involves three parts or phases as shown in the illustration: Observation, Interpretation and Application. Each phase builds on the one before. A brief description of each follows.



- Observation – What does the Bible say?
- Interpretation – What does the Bible mean?
- Application – How does this apply to me?

An example of discovery study can be found in Matthew 13:14-15. All three parts can be seen in these words of Jesus.

*In them is fulfilled the prophecy of Isaiah: "You will be ever hearing but never understanding; you will be ever seeing but never perceiving. For this people's heart has become calloused; they hardly hear with their ears, and they have closed their eyes. Otherwise they might **see with their eyes, hear with their ears, understand with their hearts and turn, and I would heal them.** (Matthew 13:14-15)*

It is Jesus' desire that people see and hear the Scriptures (observation), understand their meaning (interpretation) and turn to Him (application) so that they may receive His blessing. This manual teaches the discovery method of Bible Study because, when done properly, it produces the most reliable results. Table 1.2 gives an overview of the lessons in which these parts are taught.

Phase of discovery Bible study	Answers the question:	Matthew 13:14-17	Discussed in lessons
Observation	What does it say?	Hearing and seeing	2-4
Interpretation	What does it mean?	Understanding with the heart, perceiving	5-9
Application	What does it mean to me?	Turn and be healed	10-13

Discovery Bible study is like mining for precious gems and metals. One might find some of these on the surface, but a serious miner must dig deeper to get the most treasure. Likewise, some Scripture texts are easy to understand with simple reading, but others require careful study. In the discovery method, gathering facts about a text is called Observation. Discovering the meaning of a text is called Interpretation. The final part is Application. In this part, the Bible student applies the precious Bible truths which they have learned to their life. The Holy Spirit will guide and empower believers through each phase.



b. Types of discovery method of Bible study

Observation, Interpretation and Application can be used to study the Bible in several ways:

- Book Study – You will be doing a book study of 2 Timothy as you work through the lessons in this manual.
- Word study – This study concentrates on a particular word and researches its use within a certain book or throughout the whole Bible. Often a concordance and dictionary are used.
- Character study – Using the Bible to learn about people like Paul, Timothy and Jesus are examples of discovering characters of the Bible.
- Topical study – This type of study concentrates on a specific topic or event. It is broader in scope than a word study. Discovering everything the Bible teaches about marriage is an example of a topical study.



Lesson 1 Activity Assignments

Class Activity

1. Discuss the following questions or topics in class:
 - Why should each believer study the Bible?
 - Why are desire, knowledge and skills essential to effective Bible study?
 - Describe the two approaches to the planned method of Bible study.

- Which method is the most reliable way to study and the most likely to steer believers away from doctrinal error? Why?
 - What are the three parts or phases of discovery Bible study?
2. Each student writes their commitment to study the Bible and why.

Student Activity

1. Read the entire book of 2 Timothy. As you read, write answers to the following questions.
 - What did you find most interesting?
 - What are the main topics of the book?
 - What parts were hard to understand that you would like to study further?

Further Study Activity

1. Begin the one-year Bible reading plan shown in Appendix 2, Additional Resources

1 *Holy Bible, New King James Version* (Thomas Nelson, Inc.), 1982

OBSERVATION: Seeing the Whole Book

Objectives

- Learn the steps of observation
- Learn the skills of observation
- Learn the principles of observation
- Learn Step 1: Seeing the whole book
- Learn to use the Book Summary Worksheet Tool
- Practice the skills of observation by identifying the book's facts in 2 Timothy



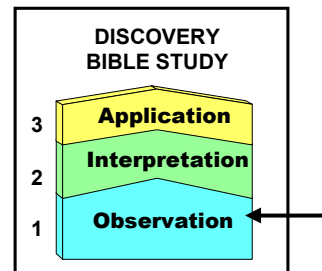
Key Verse

Jesus replied, "You are in error because you do not know the Scriptures or the power of God." (Matthew 22:29)

The key verse is Jesus' reply to a question asked by some religious leaders about the resurrection. Jesus told them that their beliefs and teaching were in error because:

1. They did not know the Scriptures
2. They did not know the power of God

Jesus quoted Exodus 3:6, explaining that God spoke to Moses as if Abraham, Isaac

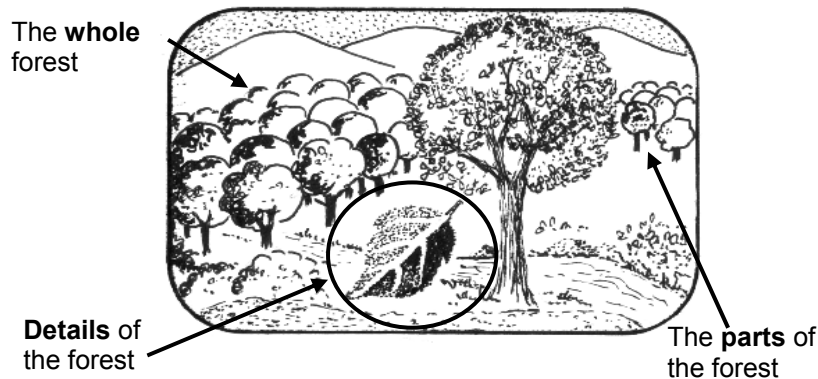


and Jacob were living. Unless we develop the skill of careful reading, we may end up missing important truths. This lesson will explain Observation, the first phase of discovery Bible study.

Overview of observation

A. What is observation?

Observation is looking at something carefully and gathering all the facts about it. From a mountaintop, a whole forest in a valley can be seen. Moving down and into the valley, individual trees can be identified. Eventually, an observer will be able to pick out a tree and examine its leaves. This is much like the steps used to properly observe a Bible text.

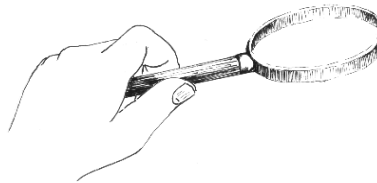


Observation is the phase of discovery Bible study in which the student reads a text carefully to become familiar with both the big picture (context) and the details.

Observation answers the question: What does the Bible say? The picture used to represent

observation shows a person holding a magnifying glass. A magnifying

glass is a special piece of glass that makes images larger to help a person see what cannot be seen clearly with one's eyes. It is a reminder to examine Scripture carefully using the steps described in this manual.





B. Steps of observation

Thorough observation is the foundation for understanding the Bible and applying its truths. All Bible study should begin with prayer! Those who study the Bible need God's help. Observation includes these three steps:

Steps of observation	
Step 1	Seeing the whole book
Step 2	Seeing the parts
Step 3	Seeing the details

C. Skills of observation

A skill is an ability developed so that a task can be done well. For example, a person who paints pictures well is said to be a skilled painter. A person who is good at Biblical observation has mastered the skills taught in this manual.



This picture represents a skillful woodcarver who is carving a cross out of wood. It is used to indicate when a skill is taught in this manual.

The following table lists the skills of observation along with the tools associated with them. The lesson in which each skill is taught is also listed.

Table 2.1 Observation skills and associated tools		
Skill	Associated tool	Lesson
Careful reading	All observation tools help develop skillful reading.	2, 3, 4
Fact finding	Book Summary Worksheet Tool	2
Identifying the context	Book Summary Worksheet Tool	2
Questioning the text	Paragraph Analysis Worksheet Tool	3
Identifying the structure	Outline Tool Paragraph Analysis Worksheet Tool	3
Identifying signpost words	Bible Text Worksheet Tool	3
Identifying important repeated words and phrases	Bible Text Worksheet Tool	4
Creating lists	Bible Text Worksheet Tool	4



D. Principles of observation

A principle is a guideline. In this manual, principles provide important guidelines for the skills and tools taught in each lesson. A plumb line is the picture used to identify principles. Correctly building a house and correctly observing Scripture rely on faithfully following guidelines. As a plumb line helps in the building of a house, principles help the student make wise observations. The principles associated with observation follow.

1. **The Bible is the Word of God.** It is true and without error in the language in which it was originally written. Be aware that the Bible version you are reading is a translation. The original Bible languages were Greek, Hebrew or Aramaic.

And the words of the Lord are flawless, like silver refined in a furnace of clay, purified seven times. (Psalm 12:6)

Sanctify them by the truth; your word is truth. (John 17:17)

📖 See also Psalm 18:30, 2 Samuel 22:31, Psalms 19:7, 33:4 and Proverbs 30:5.

2. **Although written by people using human language, the Bible is God's communication to mankind.**

For prophecy never had its origin in the will of man, but men spoke from God as they were carried along by the Holy Spirit. (2 Peter 1:21)

 See also 2 Timothy 3:16-18.

3. **Let the Bible speak for itself.** The meaning of Scripture must come from the text and not be placed there by the student. Always have the attitude of a new learner when doing observation and do not let your own expectations or desires influence your study.

I am your servant; give me discernment that I may understand your statutes. (Psalm 119:125)

4. **Read patiently.** Observation is the foundation for interpretation and application. Many errors in belief, teaching and conduct can occur as a result of poor observation. Take time to do it well before moving to the next step in your study.

Wait for the LORD, my soul waits, and in his word I put my hope. (Psalm 130:5)






Step 1: Seeing the whole book

The purpose of Step 1 is to see the big picture of the Bible book. In Step 1, the Bible student surveys the book as a surveyor does land. If you were to buy a piece of property, you would need to know the boundaries first. The most basic and necessary skill needed in Step 1 is careful reading.



A. The skill of careful reading

Various places in the Old and New Testaments contain verses about reading the Scriptures. Consider the following examples:

Table 2.2 Biblical examples of reading the Scripture	
The kings of Israel were required to copy and read the Scriptures.	
	<i>When he takes the throne of his kingdom he is to write for himself on a scroll a copy of this law, taken from that of the priest, who are the Levites. It is to be with him, and he is to read it all the days of his life so that he may learn to revere the LORD his God and follow carefully all the words of this law and these decrees. (Deuteronomy 17:18-19)</i>
There are examples of reading the Bible and explaining the meaning.	
	<i>They read from the Book of the Law of God, making it clear and giving the meaning so that the people could understand what was being read. (Nehemiah 8:8)</i>
	 See also Joshua 8:35, 2 Chronicles 34:30, Nehemiah 9:3, Jeremiah 36:6, Luke 4:16-21, Acts 13:27 and 15:21.
Jesus valued the reading of Scripture.	
	<i>He answered, "Haven't you read what David did when he and his companions were hungry? ... Or haven't you read in the Law that on the Sabbath the priests in the temple desecrate the day and yet are innocent? (Matthew 12:3, 5)</i>
	 See also Matthew 19:4, 21:16, 42, Matthew 22:31, Mark 2:25, 12:10 and 12:26.
Paul commands believers to read his letter.	
	<i>I charge you before the Lord to have this letter read to all the brothers. (1 Thessalonians 5:27)</i>
	 See also Colossians 4:16.
Paul writes his letters so that they can be read and understood.	
	<i>For we do not write you anything you cannot read or understand. ... (2 Corinthians 1:13)</i>

1) Read carefully

When performing observation of Scriptures:

- Read repeatedly
- Read prayerfully
- Read thoughtfully
- Read to see God

Each of these areas is discussed in the following text.

a. Read repeatedly

*I delight in your decrees; I will not neglect your word.
(Psalm 119:16)*

Effective study should always include a plan to read the text many times. With each reading, the text's content becomes more familiar and it becomes easier to answer the questions you are asking of it.



The Bible is different from all other books because its true author is God. It is like a well of water with no bottom. No matter how many times water is taken from this well, it will never run dry. Students will always find more to learn. Study Scripture with eagerness, humility and patience.

If possible, read the whole book of the Bible being studied at one time. Even if studying a part of a book, read the entire book at least once to gain a sense of how the part being studied fits into the whole. 📖 Read Deuteronomy 6:4-9. These verses emphasize that it is impossible to read, think or talk about Scriptures too much.

b. Read prayerfully

*Open my eyes that I may see wonderful things in your law.
(Psalm 119:18)*

God intended the study of His Word to be something He and the believer would do together. Prayer prepares the heart to receive God's help. Without His participation, understanding the deeper truths of Scripture would be impossible.

- **Thank** Him for the privilege of having access to His precious Words.
- **Invite** Him to be your teacher each time you read Scripture.
- **Expect** Him to lead you into the truths He wants you to understand.
- **Decide** to live out whatever you learn as He gives you power.



c. Read thoughtfully

I have more insight than all my teachers, for I meditate on your statutes. (Psalm 119:99)

Become curious about everything you find in Scripture. Every word or idea is there for a reason, and thorough observation will help you to understand why. Even if you have read a text before, approach it as if seeing it for the first time. Always expect new insights.

d. Read to see God

You diligently study the Scriptures because you think that by them you possess eternal life. These are the Scriptures that testify about me (John 5:39)

In the previously quoted verse, Jesus tells the Jewish religious leaders that the Old Testament (the only Scriptures available to them at that time) speaks about Him. Although they studied the Scriptures diligently, they missed the main point – that Jesus is the Messiah! The Bible is a book about God and provides a window to see and to know Him better.

When reading the Bible, look for God: Who He is, His likes, His dislikes, what He did and what He is doing. Enjoy the Lord as you see Him in the pages of Scripture. Believers should be growing in their knowledge of God so they can be like Him in both character and works. 📖 Read Philippians 3:10-14.



B. The skill of fact finding

Believers need to inspect Scripture closely and gather as many facts as possible. Look for facts that answer the questions: who, what, where, when, why and how. These facts may be about God, people, places or events. Look for important repeated words and phrases in the Bible text. When looking at the book as whole, look for the following facts.



1. **What kind of literature is it?** There are several types of literature found in the Bible. Each type must be read, interpreted

and applied in different ways. How one reads a prophetic book like Revelation is different from how one reads Paul's letter to the Colossians. A book may contain more than one of these literary types. The basic types of literature found in the Bible are shown in the following table. For a complete listing, refer to Diagram 1.1 "The Bible: Books categorized by type of literature" in Lesson 1.

Table 2.3 Examples of Bible literature	
Type of literature	Examples
Narrative/History	1 and 2 Kings, Acts
Law	Leviticus
Gospel	Matthew, Mark, Luke, John
Poetry/Wisdom	Psalms, Proverbs
Prophecy	Revelation
Letter (also called an epistle)	1 and 2 Timothy 1 and 2 Corinthians

2. **Who is the author?** Does the text actually identify the author? Some books identify the authors and some do not.
3. **Who is the intended audience?** To whom is it written?
4. **What is the historical, cultural and religious setting?** Are there clues that identify historical events, cultural references or religious practices? Are there references that identify what was happening at the time it was written? The following are a few examples of context.
 - Historical: Archelaus reigned over Judea (Matthew 2:22)
 - Cultural: Obligation to pay taxes to Caesar (Matthew 22:15-22)
 - Religious: Passover meal, The Lord's Supper (Matthew 26:17-30)
5. **Where does this book take place?** Is the geographical location identified?
6. **When did it take place?** When was it written?
7. **What are the main events?** This is especially applicable to narratives and historical books.
8. **Who are the main (primary) characters?**

9. **What are the important repeated words and phrases?** Look for the important repeated words and phrases that are essential to the meaning of the text.
10. **What are the main topics, themes, teachings (doctrines) or problems addressed?**
11. **Why was the book written?** What is the purpose of the book?
12. **What is the verse that sums up the main theme of the Book?**

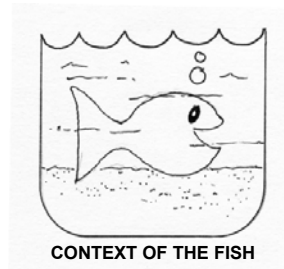
Note: The Book Summary Worksheet is a tool to write answers to the previous questions. Not all of these questions are answered in every book. For example, the author of the book of Hebrews is not identified.



C. Skill of identifying the context

1) Context is a guide to meaning

Context is the whole situation, background or environment in which something takes place. An example of context is: The fish lives in the water. The water is the context. Context is a very important part of observation. When using the discovery method of Bible study, you study the Scripture in the context of the other Scriptures.

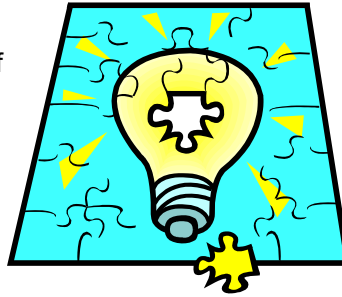


Context means understanding how the selected text fits with the surrounding verses and chapters. The context places the words and sentences in the time and place the author wrote them. Context is like bricks that fit together to make a wall. Just like bricks, each verse in Scripture fits together to make a whole thought, idea or subject.

Some Scriptures may appear to have conflicting meanings. Scripture never contradicts itself. It is essential to look carefully to identify the context accurately. This is why it is best to study a whole book of the Bible rather than just a portion of a book. Context identifies the purpose for what is written or spoken. The context determines the text's meaning.

Sometimes it is said that something is taken “out of context.” This means the verse is pulled out of the surrounding text. It is no longer in the historical and paragraph context in which it was written. Taking a Scripture “out of context” often causes it to lose some or all of the author’s intended meaning. The meaning of a verse must be considered with the verses that surround it. Teachings based on Scripture taken out of context are usually full of doctrinal error.

The illustration shows how one piece of a puzzle cannot reveal an accurate image of the completed puzzle. Only when the pieces of a puzzle are joined together, do they reveal the puzzle image. Learning the skills of observation will enable Bible students to arrive at a clear understanding of the context of Scripture.



2) Types of context

When identifying the context, consider the following primary types of context.

- **Smaller context** is the setting of verses immediately before and after the text being studied within the same book. It includes words, sentences, paragraphs and sections of a book that surround a particular verse in a Bible book.
- **Larger context** is the relationship of the text to the whole Bible. To accurately identify the larger context, it helps to become familiar with the whole Bible. Another way to identify the larger context is using cross references.
- **Geographical, historical, cultural, social and religious context** – Part of a thorough observation includes making a list of facts gathered from verses indicating geography, history, culture, social habits and religious references. When analyzed together, these facts become clues to bring into focus what life was like at the time the Biblical text was written. Knowledge of these various types of context is critical to understanding a verse’s meaning.



Book Summary Worksheet Tool

Purpose

The purpose of the Book Summary Worksheet is to help identify the context of the book being studied. It is used to write various observations relating to the whole book. This worksheet consists of 12 questions to be answered about the Bible book being studied. An explanation of each question was given earlier in this lesson in the section called “The skill of fact finding.”

How to use the Book Summary Worksheet

1. Read the questions on the Book Summary Worksheet.
2. Carefully read the Bible book being studied looking for answers to the questions.
3. Write the answers to the questions on the worksheet.
4. Review the completed worksheet to identify the book context.

Diagram 2.1, Book Summary Worksheet Example, provides answers to the first seven questions relating to the book of 2 Timothy.

Diagram 2.1 Book Summary Worksheet Example

Book Summary Worksheet
Book: 2 Timothy

1. **What kind of literature is it?**
Letter (1:1-2)
2. **Who is the author?**
Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus (1:1)
3. **Who is the intended audience?**
Timothy, Paul's son in the faith (1:2)
4. **What is the historical, geographical, cultural or religious setting?**
Historical & geographical: Chains (1:16, 2:9), Parchments (4:13), Province – Asia (1:15), Rome (1:17), Antioch, Iconium/Lystra (3:11), Ephesus (4:12, 4:13, 4:20)
Religious & cultural: forefathers (1:3), descendant of David (2:8), Moses (3:8), holy Scriptures (3:15), drink offering (4:6)
5. **Where does this book take place?**
Paul was the "Lord's prisoner," suffering in prison (1:8-9) in Rome (1:17)
6. **When did it take place?**
End of Paul's ministry (4:6-7, 18)
7. **What are the main events?**
(Not applicable to this book)
8. **Who are the main (primary) characters?**
9. **What are the important repeated words and phrases?**
10. **What are the main topics, themes, teachings or problems addressed?**
11. **Why was the book written? What is the purpose of the book?**
12. **What is the verse that sums up the main theme of the book?**



Lesson 2 Activity Assignments

Class Activity

1. Become familiar with the Book Summary Worksheet Tool by discussing the example shown on the previous page. Discuss the given answers relating to questions 1 through 7.
2. Discussion points/questions
 - What is observation?
 - What are the steps of observation?
 - What are the skills of observation?
 - Discuss the principles of observation.

Student Activity

1. Answer questions 8 through 12 on the Book Summary Worksheet Example. **Note:** These answers are provided in Appendix 4.
2. Read the book of 2 Timothy again prayerfully asking the Holy Spirit to teach you.

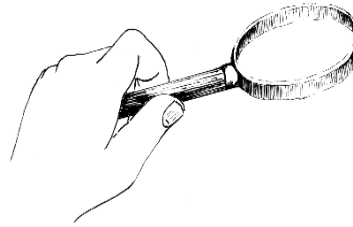
Further Study Activity

1. Timothy and Paul spent several years in the city of Ephesus ministering to that church. Read the following verses to get more insight into the culture and history of Ephesus. Make a list of everything you learn about the geography, religion, history, culture and society of that city and the believers in it.
 - Acts 19
 - Acts 20:13-38
 - 1 Timothy 1:3
 - Revelation 1:11

OBSERVATION: Seeing the Parts

Objectives

- Learn Step 2 of observation: Seeing the parts
- Learn the skills of questioning the text, identifying the structure and identifying signpost words
- Use the Outline Tool
- Use the Paragraph Analysis Worksheet Tool
- Analyze the paragraphs of 2 Timothy



Key Verse

Now the Bereans were of more noble character than the Thessalonians, for they received the message with great eagerness and examined the Scriptures every day to see if what Paul said was true. (Acts 17:11)

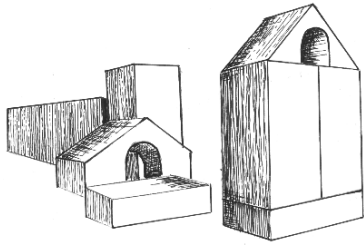
The key verse gives important information about the Bereans. They knew that studying Scripture was the only way to verify that Paul's teaching was true and came ultimately from God. Like the Bereans, students can examine the Scriptures by using the skills and tools taught in these lessons.



Step 2: Seeing the parts

Steps of observation	
Step 1	Seeing the whole book
Step 2	Seeing the parts ←
Step 3	Seeing the details

A. Introduction to Step 2: Seeing the parts



Any good book is written with a purpose. Each author organizes thoughts in ways that help the reader understand the message. These thoughts are communicated in words. Words which make sentences are the building blocks of a book. In Step 2, Bible students discover the parts and structure of Biblical texts.

To analyze means to divide something into parts for the purpose of looking at it more closely. In the study of Scripture, analytical thinking is used to see how a Bible text was constructed. When carefully analyzing a book, the student begins by identifying the paragraphs and topics in it.

For example, analytical thinking is used when a machine needs repair. The Bible is like a machine because all the parts are placed together for a purpose. When a small part inside a machine becomes broken, it must be found and replaced. If the one repairing the machine is not familiar with it, a long time must be spent to look closely at the machine. A person will ask questions that will help complete the repair. How does that work? How does this come apart? Successful repair often depends on the analytical skills of the repair person. Of course, the Bible is not broken, but students can use the same analytical skills to better understand its purpose.



B. Skill of questioning the text

It is important to ask questions of the text that begin with the words: who, what, where, when, why or how. The following table shows examples of this. In this table, questions are asked of the Bible text found in 2 Timothy 1:1-7.

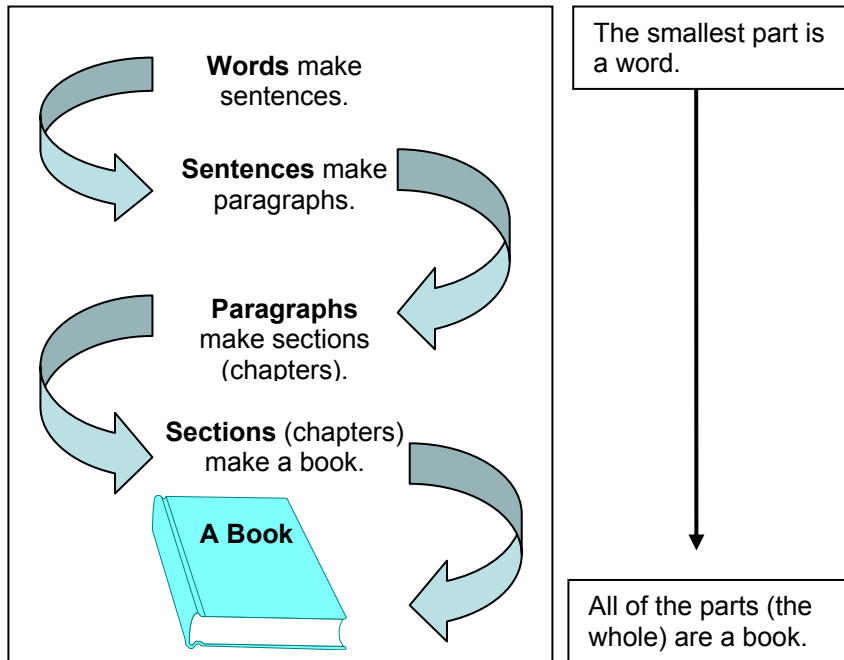
Table 3.1 Asking questions of the Scriptures (2 Timothy 1:1-7)	
Question	Answer found in Scripture
Who?	Who are the main characters? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Paul (1:1) • Jesus Christ (1:1) • God (Father) (1:1) • Timothy (1:2) • Grandmother Lois (1:5) • Mother Eunice (1:5)
What?	What does Paul remember (recall)? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • He remembers Timothy in his prayers. (1:3) • He remembers Timothy's tears. (1:4) • He remembers Timothy's sincere faith. (1:5) • He remembers the faith of Timothy's grandmother, Lois, and Timothy's mother, Eunice. (1:5)
	What does Paul remind Timothy to do? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fan into flame the gift of God. (1:6)
Where?	Where is Paul when he writes this letter? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Paul was in prison in Rome. (Note: The answer to this question is found in 2 Timothy 1:16-17.)
When?	When does Paul pray for Timothy? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Night and day. (1:3)
Why?	Why did Paul tell Timothy to fan into flame the gift of God in him? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • God gives us a spirit of power, love and self-discipline. (1:7) • God does not give a spirit of timidity. (1:7)
How?	How did Timothy receive (get) the gift of God which was in him? <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Through Paul laying hands on him. (1:6)



C. Skill: identifying the structure

The basic building blocks of written language are words, sentences, paragraphs and sections. All books contain these parts. The purpose of seeing the parts and structure of a text is to lay a firm foundation for establishing the context surrounding an individual verse. No verse should be understood without considering the surrounding Scripture and the rest of the Bible. More about the importance of context will be explained in later lessons. The following illustration shows how these parts are connected.

Diagram 3.1 Building blocks of written language



Those studying a Biblical text need to determine what structure the author used and why. Analyzing paragraphs to determine an author's topics helps the Bible student identify the parts that make up the structure of the book.

1) Elements of structure

The building blocks of written language are words, sentences, paragraphs and sections (or chapters). Diagram 3.1 (shown previously) illustrates their relationship.

A paragraph contains sentences which relate to one topic or idea. A topic is the subject of a discussion or dialogue. A new paragraph begins when the topic or idea changes. Like paragraphs, topics do not always start and end with Bible chapters.

2) Tools to identify the structure

Good observation is the best tool for identifying changes in topic, ideas and structure. It cannot be overstated that repeated reading is essential for seeing the author's intended structure.

In this lesson, the skill of identifying the structure uses two tools: the Outline Tool and the Paragraph Analysis Worksheet Tool. Both of these tools help develop the skills of finding the structure. Each tool is discussed in the following text.

a. Outlining the text

An outline is a summary of a written work. It shows the major changes in an author's thoughts and ideas. It also reveals the structure and organization of a text. Just as a skeleton shows the basic structure of a body, outlining shows the structure of the text. An outline is a list of the important ideas written in a simple form. A simple outline structure is shown in Diagram 3.2.

Diagram 3.2 Outline structure

- | |
|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none">A. First idea or main topic<ul style="list-style-type: none">1. Idea that explains the first main topic2. Another idea that explains the first idea
B. Second idea or main topic<ul style="list-style-type: none">1. An idea that explains the second main topic2. Another idea that explains the second main topic |
|--|



Outline Tool

Purpose

Outlining enables a student to show the structure of a text without filling in all the details. This is done by identifying the main ideas of the text.

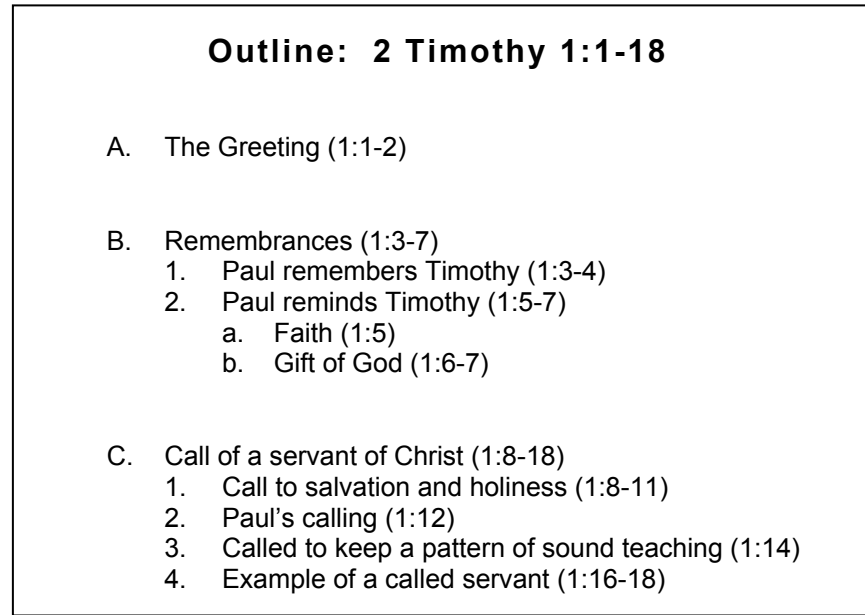
How to outline

1. Read the text to be outlined several times.
2. Look for changes in the author's writing such as:
 - Change in events or places
 - Change in topic or idea
 - Change in subject
 - Use important repeated words and phrases in the outline when possible. (The skill of identifying important repeated words and phrases is taught in Lesson 4.)
 - Briefly summarize the main topics. Identify them with capital letters (A, B, C).
 - Write the Scripture reference for each main topic.
3. Look for sentences that explain the main ideas that were identified in Step 2.
 - Look at the flow of thought.
 - The sentences that explain the main idea or give more information about it become numbers 1, 2, 3. (See Diagram 3.3, Outline Tool Example.)
 - Write the Scripture reference for each one.

Diagram 3.3, Outline Tool Example, identifies three main topics of the 2 Timothy 1:1-18 Scripture text.

- A. The greeting
- B. Remembrances
- C. Call of a servant of Christ

Diagram 3.3 Outline Tool Example



b. Analyzing the paragraphs

Paragraph analysis is not as structured as outlining. This method first identifies the topics or ideas discussed within the paragraphs. Then it summarizes these topics by giving the paragraph a title. Diagram 3.4 shows an example of a paragraph analysis for the following paragraph.

*At my first defense, no one came to my support, but everyone deserted me. May it not be held against them. But the Lord stood at my side and gave me strength, so that through me the message might be fully proclaimed and all the Gentiles might hear it. And I was delivered from the lion's mouth. The Lord will rescue me from every evil attack and will bring me safely to his heavenly kingdom. To him be glory for ever and ever. Amen.
(2 Timothy 4:16-18)*

Diagram 3.4 Paragraph analysis example

Paragraph Division	Topics	Title
2 Timothy 4:16-18	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Paul forgives those who deserted him.• The Lord protected and strengthened Paul.• The result was that the gospel message was proclaimed and God was glorified.	The Lord protected Paul when deserted

Working through the Paragraph Analysis Worksheet Tool helps students practice the skills of observation.



Paragraph Analysis Worksheet Tool

Purpose

The purpose of the Paragraph Analysis Worksheet is to provide a place to write each paragraph division, topic and title. When completed, you have a clearer picture of the content of the Scripture text. After the main topics are identified, it will be easier to determine the primary purpose for which the text was written.

How to use the Paragraph Analysis Worksheet

1. Determine where the paragraphs begin and end. Write these divisions in the first column of the Paragraph Analysis Worksheet.

Paragraph Analysis Worksheet

Paragraph Division	Topics	Title
2:1 – 2:7		
2:8 – 2:13		

2. Read the first paragraph.

3. Ask yourself: What are the main topics or ideas of this paragraph?
4. Write short statements summarizing the topics of the paragraph in the column entitled "Topics." If there is more than one thought in the paragraph, write them in this section.

Paragraph Division	Topics	Title
2:1 – 2:7	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Entrust God’s Word to the faithful. • Exhortations: Be strong, endure, play by the rules, work hard and reflect. 	

5. Do steps 2-4 for each paragraph.
6. Review all topics written in column 2.
7. Create a title for each paragraph by summarizing the topics. Write it in the column entitled "Title." Keep the title short, 10 words or less.

Paragraph Division	Topics	Title
2:1 – 2:7	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Entrust God’s Word to the faithful. • Exhortations: Be strong, endure, play by the rules, work hard and reflect. 	Be strong, entrust to the faithful and reflect

8. Observe the structure of the book as a whole using your topics and titles. Often, other divisions will become clear as you look at the overall paragraph structure.

Diagram 3.5, Paragraph Analysis Worksheet Example, shows the paragraph divisions, topics and title for the 2 Timothy 2:1-26 text.

c. Charting the text

Another way to determine the structure of a text is to create a graphical chart. This method is used by those who have mastered the other skills of Bible study. See the example in Appendix 2, How to graphically chart the topics of a Bible book.

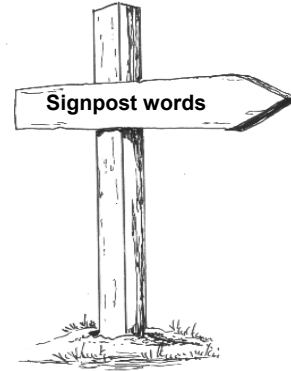
Paragraph Analysis Worksheet 2 Timothy 2:1-26		
Paragraph Division	Topics	Title
2:1 – 2:7	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Entrust God's Word to the faithful. • Exhortations: Be strong, endure, play by the rules, work hard and reflect. 	Be strong, entrust to the faithful and reflect
2:8 – 2:13	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Gospel defined. • God's Word is not chained. • Salvation is in Jesus. • Endure suffering. 	Remember Jesus and suffer/endure for the gospel and the elect
2:14 – 2:19	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Exhortations about teaching, quarrelling, God's Word and speech. • Example of false teaching, but truth wins. 	Approved workman who handles well God's Word and is careful in what he speaks
2:20 – 2:21	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Metaphor of precious and common instruments. 	Be a noble instrument in the Master's hand
2:22 – 2:26	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Exhortations to a young minister. • Do not get caught up in arguments and quarrels. • Teach well. 	The Lord's servant in right action, attitude, teaching and speaking



D. Clues to seeing the structure

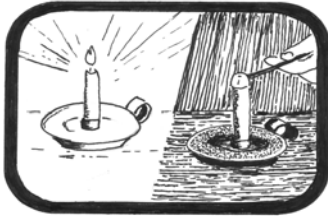
1) Skill of identifying signpost words

Signpost words are words that indicate a change in thought or topic, or words that give a greater explanation of the current topic. These words are clues that help determine the structure and message of a text. Signpost words show contrast, comparison, conclusion and express time.



a. Words of contrast

Words of contrast compare the difference between two thoughts or ideas. These words show two things that are different or opposite. An example of contrasting ideas is "light" and "darkness."



The word "but" usually signifies that a contrast is being made, but not always. Some words of contrast are "but," "however," "nevertheless" and "instead." Examples in the Bible are:

*For God did not give us a spirit of timidity, **but** a spirit of power, of love and of self-discipline. (2 Timothy 1:7)*

*... and they destroy the faith of some. **Nevertheless**, God's solid foundation stands firm. (2 Timothy 2:18-19)*

Examine the text carefully to find what is being contrasted.

But
However
Nevertheless
Instead

b. Words of comparison

Words of comparison are used to compare two things which are alike. Some words of comparison are “as,” “as it were” and “like.” Examples are:

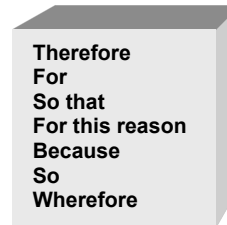


The boy is slow as a turtle.

Their teaching will spread like gangrene (2 Timothy 2:17)

c. Words of conclusion

Words of conclusion are used to complete a thought. It signals a conclusion or result. Some words of conclusion are “therefore,” “for,” “so that,” “for this reason,” “because,” “so” and “wherefore.” Examples are:



The child is short; for this reason he needs to stand on a step stool.

Therefore, I endure everything for the sake of the elect that they too may obtain the salvation that is in Christ Jesus, with eternal glory. (2 Timothy 2:10)

d. Words that express time

Words that express time tell the sequence of an event. They include “then,” “after this,” “until,” “now” or “when.” Examples are:



Wait until school is over and then go home.

On the contrary, when he was in Rome, he searched hard for me until he found me. (2 Timothy 1:17)

2) Additional clues to structure

Additional indicators of structure are:

- Repetition of the same word, phrase or idea
- Cause to effect
- Explanation
- Illustration
- Summary
- Questions asked and questions answered

Each is explained in the following text.

a. Repetition of the same word, phrase or idea

If an important word or phrase is used often, this may indicate the author's main idea. Note that some words are repeated but are not important, such as "the," "and," "an" and "a." Structure can often be determined through identifying these important repeated or emphasized words. In the book of 2 Timothy, Paul repeatedly writes about public teaching and preaching of Bible truths. Some of the words he uses repeatedly are "teach" (and its various forms), "warn" and "preach."



- *And of this gospel I was appointed a herald and an apostle and a **teacher**. (2 Timothy 1:11)*
- *What you heard from me, keep as the pattern of sound **teaching**, with faith and love in Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 1:13)*
- *And the things you have heard me say in the presence of many witnesses entrust to reliable men who will also be qualified to **teach** others. (2 Timothy 2:2)*
- *Keep reminding them of these things. **Warn** them before God against quarreling about words; it is of no value, and only ruins those who listen. (2 Timothy 2:14)*
- *Their **teaching** will spread like gangrene. Among them are Hymenaeus and Philetus. (2 Timothy 2:17)*
- *And the Lord's servant must not quarrel; instead, he must be kind to everyone, able to **teach**, not resentful. (2 Timothy 2:24)*

- You, however, know all about my **teaching**, my way of life, my purpose, faith, patience, love, endurance. (2 Timothy 3:10)
- All Scripture is God-breathed and is useful for **teaching**, rebuking, correcting and training in righteousness. (2 Timothy 3:16)
- **Preach** the Word; be prepared in season and out of season; correct, rebuke and encourage – with great patience and careful **instruction**. (2 Timothy 4:2)
- For the time will come when men will not put up with sound doctrine. Instead, to suit their own desires, they will gather around them a great number of **teachers** to say what their itching ears want to hear. (2 Timothy 4:3)

b. Cause to effect

A cause-to-effect statement shows a reason which leads to a conclusion. The following verse is an example of cause to effect.

Do not be deceived: God cannot be mocked. A man reaps what he sows. The one who sows to please his sinful nature, from that nature will reap destruction; the one who sows to please the Spirit, from the Spirit will reap eternal life. Let us not become weary in doing good, for at the proper time we will reap a harvest if we do not give up. (Galatians 6:7-9)

Sowing to please God results in eternal life. Sowing to please yourself reaps destruction.

c. Explanation

An explanation is the introduction of an idea that the author explains for the reader. Parables explained by Jesus are examples of this kind of structure. An example is found in Matthew where Jesus tells the Parable of the Weeds and then He explains it to His disciples. 📖 Read Matthew 13:36-43. The following is a short portion of Jesus' explanation.

Then he left the crowd and went into the house. His disciples came to him and said, "Explain to us the parable of the weeds in the field." He answered, "The one who sowed the good seed is the Son of Man. The field is the world, and the good seed stands for the sons of the kingdom. The weeds are the sons of the evil one, and the enemy who sows them is the devil. The

*harvest is the end of the age, and the harvesters are angels.
(Matthew 13:36-39)*

d. Illustration

Principles are illustrated by examples. An example of an illustration is found in James 5:10-11. James uses Job as an example of patience.

*Brothers, as an example of patience in the face of suffering, take the prophets who spoke in the name of the Lord. As you know, we consider blessed those who have persevered. You have heard of Job's perseverance and have seen what the Lord finally brought about. The Lord is full of compassion and mercy.
(James 5:10-11)*

e. Summary

A summary is a statement that pulls together all of the author's main ideas. It can be a sentence, a paragraph or even a chapter. Hebrews 8:1 is an example of a summary statement covering several chapters regarding the priestly ministry of Jesus.

The point of what we are saying is this: We do have such a high priest, who sat down at the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in heaven. (Hebrews 8:1)

f. Questions asked and questions answered

Sometimes the text actually asks a question or an author may answer the question or imply the answer. An example of this is found in the book of Romans. Paul uses a question to begin a new topic. 📖 Read Romans 2 and observe how Paul asks a question and then answers it. Romans 2:3-4 is the question.

So when you, a mere man, pass judgment on them and yet do the same things, do you think you will escape God's judgment? Or do you show contempt for the riches of his kindness, tolerance and patience, not realizing that God's kindness leads you toward repentance? (Romans 2:3-4)



Lesson 3 Activity Assignments

Class Activity

1. Discuss the benefits of questioning the text.
2. Review Diagram 3.5, the Paragraph Analysis Worksheet Example, for 2 Timothy 2:1-26.
3. In class, complete the Paragraph Analysis Worksheet for 2 Timothy 1:1-18. Use the Paragraph Analysis Worksheet (Diagram 3.6) provided on the following pages.
 - Read 2 Timothy 1:1-18 again. Note the paragraph breaks are provided for you in Diagram 3.6.
 - Read each paragraph to identify the topics. Write short sentence statements about the topics in column 2.
 - Write a title for each paragraph in column 3. The title should summarize the topics.

Student Activity

1. Complete a Paragraph Analysis Worksheet for 2 Timothy 3:1-17. Use the Paragraph Analysis Worksheet (Diagram 3.6) provided on the following pages.
2. Read 2 Timothy 1-3 using the Bible Text Worksheet in Appendix 3. Mark the signpost words in a unique way.

Further Study Activity

1. The paragraphs for 2 Timothy are given to you in Diagram 3.6. Complete the Paragraph Analysis Worksheet for 2 Timothy 4.
2. Read 2 Timothy 1-3 as found in the Bible Text Worksheet in Appendix 3 of this manual. Mark words that are important and repeated.

Diagram 3.6 Paragraph Analysis Worksheet for 2 Timothy

Paragraph Analysis Worksheet
Text: 2 Timothy

Page 1

Paragraph Divisions	Topics	Title
1:1 – 1:2		
1:3 – 1:7		
1:8 – 1:12		
1:13 – 1:15		
1:16 – 1:18		

Paragraph Analysis Worksheet (continued)
Text: 2 Timothy

Paragraph Divisions	Topics	Title
2:1 – 2:7		
2:8 – 2:13		
2:14 – 2:19		
2:20 – 2:21		
2:22 – 2:26		

Paragraph Analysis Worksheet (continued)
Text: 2 Timothy

Paragraph Divisions	Topics	Title
3:1 – 3:5		
3:6 – 3:9		
3:10 – 3:17		
4:1 – 4:5		

Paragraph Analysis Worksheet (continued)
Text: 2 Timothy

Paragraph Divisions	Topics	Title
4:6 – 4:8		
4:9 – 4:15		
4:16 – 4:18		
4:19 – 4:22		

OBSERVATION: Seeing the Details

Objectives

- Learn Step 3 of Observation: Seeing the details
- Learn skills of identifying important repeated words and phrases
- Learn to create lists
- Learn to use the Bible Text Worksheet
- Observe the details of 2 Timothy 1-2

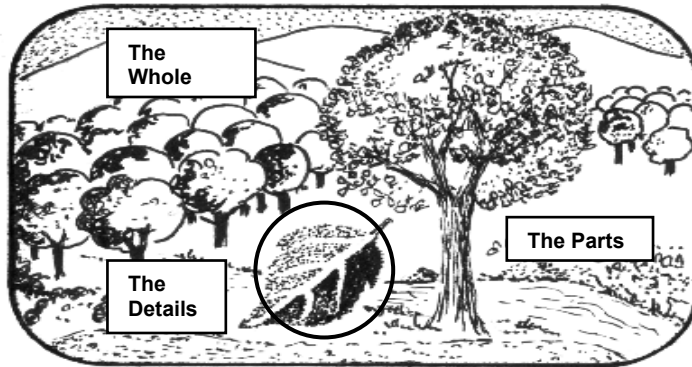


Key Verse

Meanwhile a Jew named Apollos, a native of Alexandria, came to Ephesus. He was a learned man, with a thorough knowledge of the Scriptures. (Acts 18:24-25)

In this key verse, we read that Apollos was a man with a thorough knowledge of the Scriptures. Reading carefully and seeing the details will help you know the Bible as he did.

Review: Observations of 2 Timothy



Let us review what we have learned about the book of 2 Timothy.

A. Seeing the whole book of 2 Timothy (Step 1)



The whole

In Lessons 2 and 3, students practiced the skills of observation through the study of 2 Timothy.

The following section reviews the key observations from that book.

- Paul is writing a letter to Timothy from prison in Rome. (1:1-2, 16-17, 2:9)
- Paul believes he is near the end of his life on earth. (4:6-8, 16)
- The tone of this letter is very personal, indicated by calling Timothy “son.” (1:2, 2:1)
- He asks Timothy to come and bring him several things. (4:9, 11, 13, 21)
- Paul’s purpose in writing Timothy is to give him some last instructions and encouragement about faithfully and effectively serving Jesus.

The context of 2 Timothy can be discovered through the skill of fact finding. Knowing the context helps to understand the details. The following is a summary of four types of context related to 2 Timothy.

1. **The context of Paul's circumstances:**
Suffering in prison and deserted by many of his friends. (1:15-16, 4:16)



2. **The context of the relationship between Paul and Timothy:**
 - Like a father (Paul) to a son (Timothy).



- (1:2, 2:1)
- Paul was fond of Timothy. (1:2)
- Paul knew Timothy's family based on the references to his mother and grandmother. (1:5)
- Timothy went with Paul on his second and third missionary journeys. (1 Thessalonians 3:1-2, 1 Corinthians 4:17, Acts 20:1-5)

3. **The context of Timothy's circumstances:** Timothy was a young minister of the gospel, ministering at various churches, including Ephesus. (1 Timothy 1:3)

4. **The geographical, historical, cultural, social and religious context:**

- **Geographical:** Places referenced are Asia (1:15), Rome (1:17), Antioch, Iconium, Lystra (3:11), Ephesus (4:12), Troas (4:13) and Corinth (4:20). See Diagram 4.1, Geographical map.
- **Historical context:** This letter was written after Jesus died and rose again. (2:8) By using verses in Acts, most Biblical scholars believe this letter was written after Paul's third missionary journey.
- **Cultural context:** Paul's chains are a cultural reference. (1:16) While imprisoned, Paul was literally chained. Other cultural references are to scrolls and parchments. (4:13)



- **Social context:** Christians were being persecuted at the time this letter was written. (3:12) Persecuted means to punish a person or group for their beliefs. Historical accounts say that a common method of execution at this time was being thrown to the lions. Paul referenced the “lion’s mouth.” (4:17) We know that Paul was a Roman citizen. (Acts 16: 37-38) According to Roman law, he could not be killed in this way.

Diagram 4.1 Geographical map



- **Religious context:** Paul writes that Jesus had descended from King David, a Jewish King. (2 Timothy 2:8, 2 Samuel 2:1-24) Paul uses a story about Jannes and Jambres opposing Moses as an example. (Exodus 7:11) He also mentions “drink offerings.” (Numbers 15:1-12) This makes it clear that Paul was very familiar with the Jewish Scriptures. It implies that Timothy was familiar with them as well.

Identifying these various contexts helps Bible students understand Paul’s perspective as he wrote this last letter.

B. Seeing the parts of 2 Timothy (Step 2)

Key topics in this letter were discovered using the skill of identifying the structure. They are listed in the following text.



The parts

- **Correct teaching** and avoiding those who teach wrong doctrine – “Truth” is an important word.
- **Truths of Scripture** and the need to use them correctly
- **Personal instructions** and encouragement to Timothy
- **God, Jesus Christ, Lord, Holy Spirit** – There are 15 references to Lord, 13 to Jesus Christ, 12 to God, 1 to God the Father and 1 to the Holy Spirit.

Other important repeated words are: suffer, hardship, ashamed and guard.

The remainder of this lesson will teach you how to identify the details which is Step 3 of observation.



Step 3: Seeing the details

Steps of observation	
Step 1	Seeing the whole book
Step 2	Seeing the parts
Step 3	Seeing the details ←

How important are the details? Paul thought the details of Old Testament Scripture were very important. In his letter to the Galatians, Paul’s whole argument regarding the covenant promise to Abraham was based on the singular form of the word “seed” rather than “seeds.”

📖 Read Galatians 3 for context.



The details

*Brothers, let me take an example from everyday life. Just as no one can set aside or add to a human covenant that has been duly established, so it is in this case. The promises were spoken to Abraham and to his **seed**. The Scripture does not say "and to **seeds**," meaning many people, but "and to your **seed**," meaning one person, who is Christ. (Galatians 3:15-16)*

We are commanded to correctly handle the word of truth in 2 Timothy 2:15. Seeing the details in the correct context can ensure avoiding errors that lead to false teaching.



A. Skill of identifying important repeated words & phrases

Important repeated words and phrases are clues that help identify the main topics of the text. During the last lesson, important repeated words and phrases revealed the structure of the text and helped put the details of the text in focus. They help in understanding why the text was written. Examples of different types of important repeated words and phrases follow:

- Different words with the same meaning (synonyms)

Example: Three words that mean the same thing are: "Scripture" (3:15), "Word" (4:2) and "the truth" (2:25).

- Words that refer to a person, like Paul or Timothy, and other words that refer to that person such as "I," "me," "my" "mine," "you" and "your" – The following example refers to both Paul and Timothy.

Example: **You** [Timothy] *then*, **my** [Paul] *son* [Timothy], *be strong in the grace that is in Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:1)*

- Any words that refer to the Trinity: "God," "Father," "Jesus Christ" and "Holy Spirit" – They are always important to recognize. When writing these words, be sure to notice other words that refer to God such as "who" and "whom."

Example: See Diagram 4.4, the Bible Text Worksheet Example. Notice how each reference to “God” and “Jesus” is marked.

As you identify the important repeated words and phrases, you should mark them in a unique way. If you do not feel comfortable writing in your Bible, use the Bible Text Worksheet provided for you in Appendix 3. The whole book of 2 Timothy is provided for you in Appendix 3 to mark and write notes. You may use symbols, pictures or colored pencils to mark important repeated words and phrases. For example, important repeated words can be marked with symbols or colored pencils in this way:

- Words relating to “God” are marked with a ▲, or underlined blue.
- Words relating to “Jesus” are marked by a †, or underlined red.
- Words relating to “Paul” are marked by a ■, or underlined green.
- Words relating to “Timothy” are marked with a ○, or underlined yellow.



B. Skill of creating lists

A list is a collection of facts about an important repeated word or phrase. A list can relate to one verse or several verses. Sometimes a list is made from an entire book. There are two kinds of lists: simple lists and topical lists. An example of each follows.

- A simple list shows several facts that relate to each other. Identify the words of a simple list on the Bible Text Worksheet. To do this, place a number or letter above each fact included in the list. Diagram 4.2 shows a simple list found in 2 Timothy 1:2. This list shows that God the Father and Jesus Christ give grace, mercy and peace. Note: Diagram 4.4, Bible Text Worksheet Example, shows another simple list in verses 1:7.

Diagram 4.2 Simple List

2 Timothy 1:2

God the Father and Jesus give:

1. Grace
2. Mercy
3. Peace

- A topical list is made from facts about an important repeated word or phrase. It can also be information about a topic. Each time an important repeated word is used, the specific fact or idea associated

Diagram 4.3 Topical List about God

2 Timothy 1:1-7	
1:1	God willed Paul to be an <u>apostle</u>
1:2	God gives grace, mercy and peace
1:3	God is thanked
1:3	God (whom) is served
1:7	God gives gifts
1:7	God does not give spirit of timidity
1:7	God gives spirit of power
1:7	God gives spirit of love
1:7	God gives spirit of self discipline

with it is written down. Ask yourself why that word is repeated. For example: What can I learn about God from 2 Timothy 1:1-7? See the topical list (Diagram 4.3) of all the facts about God gathered from those few short verses. Include the reference for each fact as shown in the example. Continue to build the topical list to include each time that word is used in the whole book (or text being studied). A topical list can become very long. Use separate sheets of paper for topical lists on each important word or phrase.



Bible Text Worksheet Tool

Purpose

The Bible Text Worksheet provides a copy of the Scripture text so you can write on it. Mark important repeated words, lists, signpost words and other notes about the details within the text. You may also want to write ideas and questions for further study.

How to use the Bible Text Worksheet

1. Create a Bible Text Worksheet for the book being studied. It is helpful to leave space between the lines and in the margins for notes. Note that a Bible Text Worksheet for 2 Timothy 1-3 is provided for you in Appendix 3.

2. Read the Bible text. Be careful to look for and mark important repeated words and phrases on the Bible Text Worksheet.
3. Identify and mark simple lists on your worksheet as taught earlier in this lesson.
4. Look for and mark signpost words on the Bible Text Worksheet. Refer to Lesson 3, Section D, for a list of signpost words.
5. Look for and mark other forms of structure including repetition, cause to effect, explanation, illustration, summary and questions asked/questions answered.
6. Go back and look over the important repeated words and phrases that were marked. Create topical lists from those words.
7. When reading the text, look for details relating to people, places, problems and circumstances. Remember to ask: who, what, where, when, why and how.
8. Write additional observations and questions on the Bible Text Worksheet or on another piece of paper.

Diagram 4.4 Bible Text Worksheet Example

Bible Text Worksheet
Text: 2 Timothy 1:1-7

Some important repeated words and phrases
(There are others for you to find.)

▲ God	■ Paul
† Jesus Christ (Lord)	○ Timothy

Chapter 1

¹Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus by the will of God, according
to the promise of life that is in Christ Jesus,
²To Timothy, my dear son:
¹ Grace, mercy and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord.
³I thank God, whom I serve, as my forefathers did, with a clear
conscience, as night and day I constantly remember you in my prayers.
⁴Recalling your tears, I long to see you, so that I may be filled with joy.
⁵I have been reminded of your sincere faith, which first lived in your
grandmother Lois and in your mother Eunice and, I am persuaded, now
lives in you also. ⁶For this reason I remind you to fan into flame the gift of
God, which is in you through the laying on of my hands. ⁷For God did not
give us a spirit of timidity. but a spirit of power. of love and of self-discipline.



Lesson 4 Activity Assignments

Class Activity

1. Review Diagram 4.4, the Bible Text Worksheet Example, for 2 Timothy 1:1-7.
 - What did you learn about God, Father, Son and Holy Spirit?
 - What did you learn about Paul?
 - What did you learn about Timothy?
 - Did you find any signpost words? What are they and where did you find them?
2. In class, complete a Bible Text Worksheet for 2 Timothy 1:8-12 provided in Diagram 4.5.
 - Identify the important repeated words and phrases. Mark each one in a unique way on the Bible Text Worksheet.
 - Look for and mark simple lists on Bible Text Worksheet.
 - Look for topical lists. Write them on separate pieces of paper if you do not have enough room.
 - Mark signpost words on the Bible Text Worksheet with double underlines or any other unique way you choose to mark them.
 - What else did you learn from this text?

Student Activity

1. Complete a Bible Text Worksheet for 2 Timothy 1:13 through 2:26. The Bible Text Worksheet includes 2 Timothy 1-3. It is provided in Appendix 3.

Further Study Activity

1. Complete the Bible Text Worksheet for 2 Timothy 3 using the Bible Text Worksheet provided in Appendix 3.

2. Create your own Bible Text Worksheet for 2 Timothy 4. You may hand write it or type it. Make it in such a way that you can mark important repeated words and write other observations on it.

Note to teacher: Appendix 4 contains the following completed activities:

- Bible Text Worksheet for 2 Timothy 1-2
- Simple and topical lists found in 2 Timothy 1-2

Bible Text Worksheet
Text: 2 Timothy 1:8-12

⁸So do not be ashamed to testify about our Lord, or ashamed of me his prisoner. But join with me in suffering for the gospel, by the power of God, ⁹who has saved us and called us to a holy life—not because of anything we have done but because of his own purpose and grace. This grace was given us in Christ Jesus before the beginning of time, ¹⁰but it has now been revealed through the appearing of our Savior, Christ Jesus, who has destroyed death and has brought life and immortality to light through the gospel.

¹¹And of this gospel I was appointed a herald and an apostle and a teacher. ¹²That is why I am suffering as I am. Yet I am not ashamed, because I know whom I have believed, and am convinced that he is able to guard what I have entrusted to him for that day.

INTERPRETATION: Defined

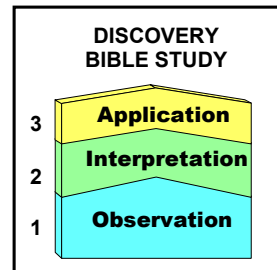
Objectives

- Learn the meaning of interpretation
- Understand the steps of interpretation
- Learn the principles of interpretation
- Learn the skills of interpretation
- Use the Discovery Worksheet tool

Key Verse

*My purpose is that they may be encouraged in heart and united in love, so that they may have the full riches of **complete understanding**, in order that they may know the mystery of God, namely, Christ, in whom are hidden all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge. I tell you this so that no one may deceive you by fine-sounding arguments. (Colossians 2:2-4)*

In the key verse, Paul explains why he wants to bring the message that God has given him to believers. These Words from God will give them encouragement and love for each other. All believers can understand things now that were a mystery to those in the past. Knowing Jesus is the key to understanding and



possessing wonderful spiritual treasure. Knowledge of God and His Word keeps believers from deception by false teachers and false teachings. In this lesson, you will begin to learn how to interpret Scripture correctly.

Overview of interpretation

A. What is interpretation?

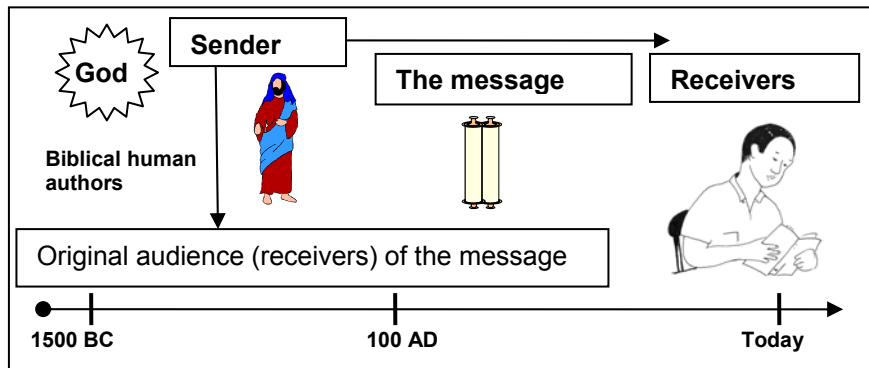
Interpretation is discovering the correct meaning of a text. It occurs when a student correctly understands the author's intended meaning. Four things must be considered when interpreting a text:

- The human author
- The Bible text itself
- God (the ultimate Author)
- The original hearers and/or readers

The ideas and opinions of the student should not influence the interpretation of the text. It is the student's responsibility to discover the author's intended meaning. When interpretation is done in this way, the meaning of a text will remain the same for all students of Scripture, whenever or wherever they may live.

All communication needs a **sender** (who writes or speaks), a **message** and a **receiver** (who reads or listens). Diagram 5.1 illustrates this concept.

Diagram 5.1 Senders and receivers of communication



📖 For more Scriptures on the importance of understanding God's message, see Matthew 13:11-23, Mark 4:10-12, Luke 8:10, Psalms 119:34 and 104-105.

1) Understanding Scripture requires God's help

Although the Bible has human authors, its ultimate Author is God Himself. He inspired these human authors to say or write His exact message. This is why it is called the "Word of God" (2 Peter 1:20-21). God delivered His Word through people using human language. God wanted all obedient believers to understand what He said. Jesus helped His disciples understand Scripture as He walked with them after His resurrection.

📖 Read Luke 24:13-45. Notice the following verses:

... he [Jesus] explained to them what was said in all the Scriptures concerning himself. (Luke 24:27)

... Then he opened their minds so they could understand the Scriptures. (Luke 24:45)

Jesus still opens the minds of those who become His disciples today as they carefully study His Word. The following text helps explain the way He does this.

But the Counselor, the Holy Spirit, whom the Father will send in my name, will teach you all things and will remind you of everything I have said to you. (John 14:26)

📖 See also 1 John 2:27, 1 Corinthians 2:12-16 and Isaiah 11:2.

2) Understanding sometimes requires digging

The meaning of some Scriptures is easy to understand and obey. An example is:

Rejoice in the Lord always ... (Philippians 4:4)

And some Scriptures are hard to understand even for mature believers. Peter explains this in the following verse:

... just as our dear brother Paul also wrote you with the wisdom that God gave him. He writes the same way in all his letters, speaking in them of these matters. His letters contain some



things that are hard to understand, which ignorant and unstable people distort, as they do the other Scriptures, to their own destruction. (2 Peter 3:15-16)

Obtaining precious treasures from the ground takes a lot of hard work. This is also true of understanding some Scriptures. In Proverbs 2:1-6, we see God's instructions for understanding His Word. Notice that He promises to give understanding **after** we have worked hard to find it.



*My son, if you **accept** my words and **store** up my commands **turning** your ear to wisdom and **applying** your heart to understanding, and if you **call** out for insight and **cry** aloud for understanding and if you **look** for it as for silver and **search** for it as for hidden treasure, then you will understand the fear of the LORD and find the knowledge of God. For the LORD **gives** wisdom, and from his mouth come knowledge and understanding. (Proverbs 2:1-6)*

Table 5.1 Action words in Proverbs 2:1-6	
Action words	Who does the work?
Accept and store	Believers learn and accept God's Word using the skills of <u>observation</u> .
Turning and applying	Believers make a conscious decision to understand using the skills of <u>interpretation</u> .
Call and cry	Believers pray to God for understanding.
Look and search	Believers find the meaning of hard-to-understand texts through digging it out like digging out gold or gems from the earth.
Gives	The Lord gives wisdom, knowledge and understanding.

3) True understanding results in right living and teaching

Believers prove they understand and believe the Bible by obeying what they learn. God's Word does not benefit those who do not obey it.

📖 Read James 2:14-20. True understanding deepens a believer's relationship with God. Outwardly, it is displayed by living right and teaching right.

- **Living right** – Bible study that is truly effective results in a changed life that is pleasing to God. These changes come from correct application, which is the last phase of discovery Bible study (Lessons 10-13).

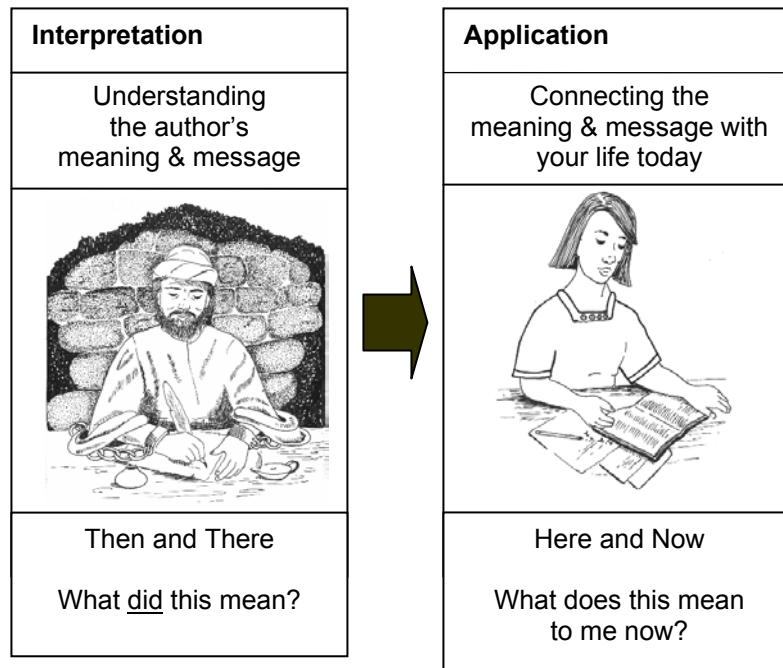
📖 See James 3:13, Romans 12:1-2 and 2 Corinthians 3:18.

- **Teaching right** – Understanding Scripture equips believers to teach God’s Word accurately to others. Consider the following verse:

Do your best to present yourself to God as one approved, a workman who does not need to be ashamed and who correctly handles the word of truth. (2 Timothy 2:15)

Interpretation is the basis for application. A student of the Bible must first understand the meaning of the author’s message before trying to determine how to use it today. Diagram 5.2 illustrates this concept.

Diagram 5.2 Connecting with the meaning and message





B. Steps of interpretation

There are six steps to interpretation as shown in the following chart:

Steps of interpretation	
Step 1	Identify the Bible texts that are not understood
Step 2	Establish the various contexts: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Historical context• Grammatical & structural context• Types of Biblical writing
Step 3	Compare with other Scriptures
Step 4	Define words
Step 5	Consult other resources
Step 6	Conclude: Decide the meaning



C. Skills of interpretation

Skilful interpretation is a mixture of the following elements:

- Thorough observation
- Discovering the author's meaning by careful use of the principles and tools of interpretation
- Prayerfully seeking the Lord's help
- Trusted Biblical resources - This could be asking questions of older and wiser Christians or reading books that contain helpful material written by trusted authors.
- Obeying what you already understand so that God will show you even deeper truths

Table 5.2 Interpretation skills and associated tools		
Skill	Associated tools/helps	Lesson
Finding the author's meaning	All	2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8
Identifying and understanding literature types	Knowledge and analytical thinking	6, 7
Comparison – Studying words and topics	Dictionaries Concordances Bible Commentaries Various Bible versions	8
Recognizing interpretation errors	All	9



D. Principles of interpretation

Principles of interpretation are guidelines that help determine the accurate meaning of Scripture. The basic principles of interpretation are:

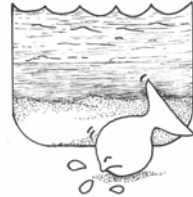
1. **Scripture is the final authority.** Do not try to make the Bible line up with your own ideas. It is the only standard for doctrine and conduct. Our lives must conform to Scripture. No other written work should be allowed to contradict, limit or go beyond what is in Scripture.
2. **Let Scripture interpret Scripture.** Usually, any text can be understood better in light of other texts in Scripture. The Bible will never contradict itself. There is complete agreement within it.
3. **Interpret the Bible using a common understanding of the words.**
 - A word has one literal meaning when used in a sentence.
 - A word's meaning is tied to the sentence by rules of grammar.
 - A word's meaning is understood from the other words around it.

4. **Interpret the text literally unless the writing style indicates otherwise.** Do not look for a hidden meaning unless it is implied that there really is a second meaning. Some writing styles which have a second meaning are:

- Figures of speech
- Parables
- Symbols
- Allegories
- Types
- Prophecies

Each has its own guidelines for interpretation and is explained in Lesson 6 or 7.

5. **Interpret the Bible in context.** Context is a guide to interpretation. A fish out of water cannot live. An interpretation made “out of context” should be examined with suspicion. Consider every type of context that a text may have as explained in earlier lessons.



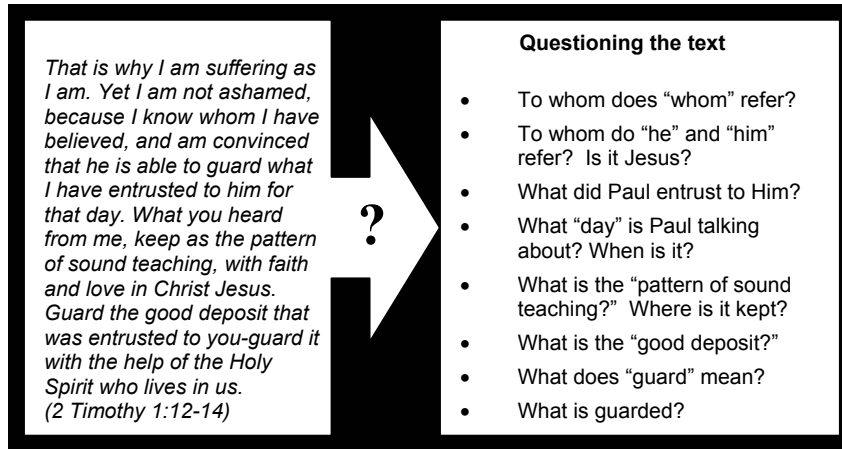
6. **Seek to find the one intended meaning of the text.** Each text will have only one meaning, but may have many applications.
7. **Recognize the difference between the spirit and the letter of the Law.** There are two extremes to avoid: 1) making texts into rigid and strict laws or 2) disregarding clear literal meanings.



Step 1: Identify the Bible texts not understood

The first step of interpretation uses the skill of questioning the text. Stay alert while reading the Bible. Do not read casually, even when reading familiar verses. To find the author’s meaning, ask questions about people, events, motives and methods. Use these words to ask questions: who, what, where, when, why and how. Diagram 5.3 shows an example using some of these questions to uncover what is not fully understood.

Diagram 5.3 Example of questioning the text



Discovery Worksheet Tool

Purpose

The Discovery Worksheet is used in all phases of discovery Bible study. This tool provides a place to write details seen during all three phases of the discovery method of Bible study: observation, interpretation and application. It is also a place to write answers to your questions. When completed, students understand how they can correctly apply the truths they learn to their lives.

How to complete the Discovery Worksheet

1. Get a Discovery Worksheet form from the end of this lesson. Make as many copies of this form as you may need during your study of 2 Timothy. Look at Diagram 5.4, the Discovery Worksheet Example. It shows 2 Timothy 2:12-14.
2. As you read the Bible text, identify important details. Write them briefly in the first column. Write the chapter and verse where each detail is found. Do not be afraid to write down whatever you see. Some important details are:

- A fact about God
 - The context of a discussion
 - Something you learn about a Bible character
 - A Bible truth
 - A command or a principle
3. In the second column, write questions about any part of the text that is unclear to you.
 4. Answer each question written in column 2 using the skills and tools of observation and interpretation. Write answers in column 3. Some answers will become obvious only with further observation.
 5. In column 4, write how you intend to apply the text to your life. Although the principles of application will be studied in later lessons, consider this seriously and write down your ideas.
 6. If you have more than one Discovery Worksheet for a particular text or book, number them sequentially (page 1, 2, 3, 4, 5).
 7. You may want to keep all your worksheets relating to a particular book of the Bible in one notebook. This will become a helpful reference when teaching the Bible to others.

Diagram 5.4 Discovery Worksheet Example

Discovery Worksheet

Bible text: 2 Timothy 1:12-14

Page 1

Observation		Interpretation	Application
What does it say?		What does it mean?	What does it mean to me?
Details	Questions	Meaning/ Understanding	My response
Paul is not ashamed because he knows Jesus. (1:12)	What could cause Paul to be ashamed?	The context suggests that he is suffering in prison because of preaching the gospel. (vs 1: 8)	
Paul is convinced that Jesus is able to guard what is entrusted to him. (1:12)	What does guard mean?	The Greek word, <i>phulasso</i> , means "to watch, be on guard, to preserve, obey, avoid." It is also translated as "keep."	I need to believe that God will guard what I entrust to Him. Praise you, Jesus, for your faithfulness to me!
Paul tells Timothy to use the teaching he heard from Paul as his pattern of teaching. (1:13)	What does pattern mean?	One commentary says it is a model or standard for teaching.	It would be helpful to observe how and what Paul taught and use it as a pattern for my teaching to the church.
Sound teaching should include faith and love in Jesus. (1:13)			I need to add love to my teaching. I also need to believe God to do His work in people. I need to love the people that I teach.
Guard the good deposit that was entrusted to you with the help of the Holy Spirit. (1:14)	What is the good deposit? ----- Is this word "guard" the same as the one used in verse 12?	From the context, the good deposit is the pattern of sound teaching or the gospel. Yes, it is the same word as in verse 12.	I need to guard God's Word in such a way that it is not distorted or damaged through misinterpretation by me or others. I need to be careful how I handle the Word of God.



Lesson 5 Activity Assignments

Class Activity

1. Review Diagram 5.4, the Discovery Worksheet Example, showing 2 Timothy 1:12-14.
2. Make a copies of the blank Discovery Worksheet provided on the following page (Diagram 5.5). Fill out columns 1-3 using 2 Timothy 2:1-13 as your text.
3. Discussion points/questions
 - What is interpretation?
 - Why is it so important to know the author's meaning?
 - How would the interpretation be affected if you interpreted a text through the eyes of your own culture?
 - What should be the result of accurate interpretation?

Student Activity

1. Complete columns 1-3 of a blank Discovery Worksheet (Diagram 5.6) using 2 Timothy 2:14-26 as the text. If you need more space, create your own Discovery Worksheet.

Further Study Activity

1. Create a Discovery Worksheet. Complete columns 1-3 of the Discovery Worksheet using 2 Timothy 3:1-9 as the text.

Note to teacher: Create or copy the Discovery Worksheets prior to class for your students to use.

Diagram 5.5 Class Activity

Discovery Worksheet

Bible text: _____

Page _____

Observation		Interpretation	Application
What does it say?		What does it mean?	What does it mean to me?
Details	Questions	Meaning/ Understanding	My response

Diagram 5.6 Class Activity

Discovery Worksheet

Bible text: _____

Page _____

Observation		Interpretation	Application
What does it say?		What does it mean?	What does it mean to me?
Details	Questions	Meaning/ Understanding	My response

INTERPRETATION: Types of Biblical Writing – Part 1

Objectives

- Learn to identify the context
- Learn to identify literal and figurative language
- Learn guidelines to interpret various types of Biblical writing
- Identify and interpret figurative language in 2 Timothy



Key Verse

Let the wise listen and add to their learning, and let the discerning get guidance – for understanding proverbs and parables, the sayings and riddles of the wise. (Proverbs 1:5-6)



The Bible has various forms or types of writing throughout its 66 books. The key verse indicates two of these types: Proverbs and parables. This lesson is designed to help students learn how to interpret types of Biblical writing. Correctly understanding proverbs, poetry, parables and other picture-talk language is challenging. Learning sound principles for understanding these types of Biblical writing helps the Bible student to interpret them properly. The key verse encourages students to understand the meaning of figurative language.



Step 2: Establish the various contexts

Steps of interpretation	
Step 1	Identify the Bible texts that are not understood
Step 2	Establish the various contexts: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Historical context • Grammatical & structural context • Types of Biblical writing ←
Step 3	Compare with other Scriptures
Step 4	Define words
Step 5	Consult other resources
Step 6	Conclude: Decide the meaning

A. Context work

Context is a valuable guide in effective Bible study. This reliable step helps students discover the meaning of many difficult texts. Doing thorough observation can be hard work. The reward, however, is gaining knowledge of the historical, geographical, cultural, social and religious contexts of the Bible. These contexts are often an important key to understanding the author's intended meaning. The following table shows various types of context and where each fits into the discovery Bible study process.

Context type	Phase and step of discovery Bible study	Lesson
Historical, geographical, cultural, social, religious context	Observation: Steps 1, 2, 3 Interpretation: Steps 3, 5	2, 3, 4 8
Smaller (structural) context	Observation: Step 2	3
Grammatical context	Observation: Step 3	4
Literary context	Interpretation: Step 2	6, 7
Larger context - the context of the whole Bible	Interpretation: Step 3	6, 8

1) Larger context

The larger context refers to how a text compares with the rest of the Bible concerning a particular topic. The principle of interpretation used is “Let Scripture interpret Scripture.” The tool used is a concordance which will be explained in Lesson 8.

2) Literary context

A Bible book is generally categorized by the kind of literature it contains. Refer to Lesson 1, Diagram 1.1, which shows the books of the Bible categorized by literature type. The literature type was identified in Observation Step 1, “Seeing the Whole” (Lesson 2). However, just knowing the general literature type is not enough. Within each book, there may be several types of writing (styles) used. It is important to determine the various writing styles used in a Bible book so that you can interpret the Bible text correctly. An author may use both literal and figurative language. For example, 2 Timothy is a letter. Letters are normally interpreted literally. However, Paul also used figurative language in this letter. Paul uses the metaphors of a soldier, athlete and farmer. (2 Timothy 2:3-7)

*Endure hardship with us **like a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. No one serving as a soldier gets involved in civilian affairs – he wants to please his commanding officer. Similarly, if anyone competes **as an athlete**, he does not receive the victor’s crown unless he competes according to the rules. The **hardworking farmer** should be the first to receive a share of the crops. Reflect on what I am saying, for the Lord will give you insight into all this. (2 Timothy 2:3-7)*

The style of writing will give clues as to whether the author intended his words to be understood literally or figuratively. The Bible should be taken literally, unless the writing style indicates otherwise.



Literal and figurative language

1) Literal language

a. Definition

To understand a Bible text literally means to seek a meaning that stays with the normally accepted meaning of the words. The way words are used in a sentence often helps identify the intended meaning. If the text uses language that is normally understood literally, a hidden or second meaning should not be sought. There is a saying in English: "If the plain sense of Scripture makes common sense, seek no other sense or it will become nonsense." Literal styles used in the Bible are found in books containing law, teachings, narratives, history and letters.

b. Examples

Biblical books containing law, teachings, narratives, history and letters are normally interpreted literally. Examples of these types of writing are shown in Table 6.2. This table shows only a few examples. Refer back to Diagram 1.1, "The Bible: Books categorized by types of literature," in Lesson 1 to see how each Bible book is categorized.

Type of literal literature	Description	Biblical examples
Narrative/ history	This type of writing tells actual historical events. These true stories make up 40% of the Old Testament. The Gospels (Matthew, Mark, Luke and John) and Acts are also historical narratives. Do not look for "hidden" meanings in narratives. However, each narrative book may contain various forms of figurative language and should be interpreted as such.	Genesis Joshua Judges Ruth 1 & 2 Samuel 1 & 2 Kings 1 & 2 Chronicles Ezra Nehemiah The Gospels Acts

Table 6.2 Literature types that are interpreted literally		
Type of literal literature	Description	Biblical examples
Direct teaching	This type of writing teaches readers directly to believe or do something. The "Law" found in the Old Testament is an example of direct teaching.	Exodus 20 Deuteronomy 33 The Letters
Letters (epistles)	A letter is written from a <u>Christian</u> leader to a person, a local church or a group of people.	Romans Galatians 1 & 2 Corinthians

There are people who do not believe that the miracles described in the Bible really happened. As a result, they take portions of Scripture that are written to be understood literally and claim it is figurative language.

John 6:16-21 is an example of a historical narrative. The miracles described should be understood literally, not figuratively. John wrote this gospel so that we may believe that Jesus was the Christ (John 20:31). John included many of the miracles of Jesus to show that He was God in the flesh, the Messiah.

When evening came, his disciples went down to the lake, where they got into a boat and set off across the lake for Capernaum. By now it was dark, and Jesus had not yet joined them. A strong wind was blowing and the waters grew rough. When they had rowed three or three and a half miles, they saw Jesus approaching the boat, walking on the water; and they were terrified. But he said to them, "It is I; don't be afraid." Then they were willing to take him into the boat, and immediately the boat reached the shore where they were heading. (John 6:16-21)

2) Figurative language

a. Definition

Figurative language means that an author uses words and sentences in a way that shows something is different from the normal and literal meaning. An author uses figurative language to illustrate an idea or thought in an imaginative way. It is a way of speaking using "picture talk."

b. Example: Types of figurative language

Knowing when words are to be understood literally or figuratively is the key to understanding many difficult portions of Scripture. Experts who study Scripture and language have identified 28 different types of figurative language, or “picture talk,” used in the Bible. This manual discusses some of the most important types of figurative language. Each type will be defined and an example given.

- Metaphors
- Similes
- Exaggeration (hyperbole)
- Personification
- Poetry
- Wisdom literature
- Parables
- Allegories
- Prophecy
- Symbols
- Types

Often figurative language is used to compare one thing to another. An example of comparison used in figurative language is as follows:

*Avoid godless chatter, because those who indulge in it will become more and more ungodly. Their teaching **will spread like gangrene**. Among them are Hymenaeus and Philetus, (2 Timothy 2:16-17)*

Paul is not using the term gangrene to give a medical lesson. Hymenaeus and Philetus are not literally spreading gangrene, a disease that quickly spreads and causes the death of living tissues if it is not stopped. This comparison illustrates how false teachings can spread and cause harm to the church.

The following Scripture references are a few examples where figurative language is used in the Bible: Genesis 49:9, 13-14, 21-22, 27, Psalm 1:34, Matthew 23:27 and Mark 3:17. This is a very short list. There are many places in the Bible where figurative language is used.

Specific guidelines are given in this lesson to help students interpret these various types of writing.

3) Why is figurative language used in the Bible?

The following is a list of reasons why figurative language is used:

- Since God is so different from us, metaphors are the only way we can describe Him. Examples are:
 - God is a consuming fire (Exodus 24:17, Hebrews 12:29)
 - God is light (Psalm 4:6, John 9:5)
- Figurative language is used to emphasize important concepts. In the following verse, Jesus emphasized the cunning and deceitful nature of Herod by calling him a fox.

At that time some Pharisees came to Jesus and said to him, "Leave this place and go somewhere else. Herod wants to kill you." "He [Jesus] replied, "Go tell that fox, 'I will drive out demons and heal people today and tomorrow, and on the third day I will reach my goal.' " (Luke 13:31-32)

- Figurative language is used as an effective way to illustrate a point or clarify a truth.
- Figurative language is easy to remember.
- Figurative language speaks to the heart, not just the mind.
- Figurative language is sometimes used as a code so that only certain hearers will understand. 📖 Read Matthew 13:10-17. Jesus often taught in parables, a type of figurative language. Sometimes, it was hard to understand the meaning of His parables. Jesus explains why he often uses this form of speaking in the following Scripture.

The disciples came to him and asked, "Why do you speak to the people in parables?" He replied, "The knowledge of the secrets of the kingdom of heaven has been given to you, but not to them. Whoever has will be given more, and he will have an abundance. Whoever does not have, even what he has will be taken from him. This is why I speak to them in parables: "Though seeing, they do not see; though hearing, they do not hear or understand." (Matthew 13:10-13)

4) How to identify figurative language

The questions below may help you determine if a Bible text contains figurative language. Answer the following questions.

- **Does the text indicate figurative language is used?** For example, Genesis 41 and Daniel 7-12 relate dreams which, by their very nature, are symbolic language.

- Is the phrase or expression obviously a figure of speech? See the following example:

Like a gold ring in a pig's snout is a beautiful woman who shows no discretion. (Proverbs 11:22)

- **Does the text make an unreasonable or absurd statement if it is taken literally?** Some examples are:

I am the gate; whoever enters through me will be saved. (John 10:9)

Let the rivers clap their hands, let the mountains sing together for joy (Psalm 98:8)

In John 10:9, Jesus was not saying that He is literally a gate. Psalm 98:8 is not saying rivers literally have hands that clap or that mountains have the ability to sing. Figurative language is used in both of these cases.

- **Does the text indicate something immoral or something that violates another Scripture if taken literally?** The following verse is an example.

Jesus said to them, "I tell you the truth, unless you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink his blood, you have no life in you. Whoever eats my flesh and drinks my blood has eternal life, and I will raise him up at the last day." (John 6:53-54)

Was Jesus saying that His followers should eat human flesh? No. That would be a violation of the Old Testament law. God does not violate His own character and eternal Word.

- **Does the surrounding context contain clues indicating that figurative language is used?** See the following example.

... I ought to have been commended by you, for I am not in the least inferior to the "super-apostles," even though I am nothing. The things that mark an apostle – signs, wonders and miracles – were done among you with great perseverance. How were you inferior to the other churches, except that I was never a burden to you? Forgive me this wrong! (2 Corinthians 12:11-13)

Paul is not literally saying that he is wrong and needs to ask the Corinthians for forgiveness. Paul is using sarcasm to make his

point. Although he had the right to expect the Corinthians to pay for his expenses while teaching them, Paul worked to pay his own expenses. (1 Corinthians 9:4-5, 1 Timothy 5:17-18, 1 Thessalonians 2:9 and 2 Thessalonians 3:8-9) The fact that he did not ask the Corinthians to pay for his expenses was his gift to them, not an offence. His use of this type of figurative language is designed to emphasize his right to be given more respect than the “super apostles” that were deceiving them and taking their money. 📖 Read 2 Corinthians 12 for the complete context.

- **If the text is taken literally, will it contradict a clearer and more consistent message of Scripture?** The following verse is an example.

"If anyone comes to me and does not hate his father and mother, his wife and children, his brothers and sisters – yes, even his own life – he cannot be my disciple." (Luke 14:26)

It is clear from other Scriptures that believers should honor their parents and love one another. This text cannot literally mean that believers must “hate” their parents. Jesus is using a type of figurative language called “exaggeration.” He is saying that he demands a love so great from his disciples that love for their parents will seem like hate when compared to it. For example, if Jesus tells His disciples to do something that their parents tell them not to do, they will disregard their parents and obey Him.

5) General guidelines to interpret figurative language

- Identify the text as either figurative or literal language.
- Use the general guidelines for figurative language and the specific guidelines for each type of figurative language.
- Determine the literal meaning that the author intended when he chose to use figurative language.
- Resist the temptation to add more meaning to the figurative language than the author had intended.



C. Figurative language: figures of speech

A figure of speech is a word, phrase or expression used in an imaginative way. This is one way to communicate an idea that is difficult to understand. Behind every figure of speech there is a plain meaning. The student's job is to discover the plain meaning relating to each figure of speech.

Figures of speech can be found in most books of the Bible. Although there are many kinds of figures of speech, this lesson will explain four of the most common: metaphor, simile, exaggeration and personification. A definition and example of each follows.

1) Metaphor

A metaphor is an **implied** comparison between two things which are different. A metaphor suggests how two different things are alike. In the following example, Jesus compares himself to bread.

I am the bread of life. (John 6:48)

And he took bread, gave thanks and broke it, and gave it to them, saying, "This is my body given for you; do this in remembrance of me." In the same way, after the supper he took the cup, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:19-20)

2) Simile

A simile is an **expressed** comparison of two different things using words of comparison. Look for words like "as," "as it were," "like," "as ... so is" and "such as" that indicate a simile. In Lesson 3, you learned about a type of signpost word that indicates a comparison.

... His eyes were like blazing fire. (Revelation 1:14)

His appearance was like lightning ... (Matthew 28:3)


3) Exaggeration (hyperbole)

An exaggeration is a deliberate exaggeration for vivid affect, emphasis or impact. When exaggeration is used, look for the thought that is so important that it is overstated.

*And all the people went up after him, playing flutes and rejoicing greatly, so that the ground shook with the sound.
(1 Kings 1:40)*

*"Why do you look at the speck of sawdust in your brother's eye and pay no attention to the plank in your own eye? How can you say to your brother, 'Let me take the speck out of your eye,' when all the time there is a plank in your own eye? You hypocrite, first take the plank out of your own eye, and then you will see clearly to remove the speck from your brother's eye."
(Matthew 7:3-5)*

*Again, I tell you, it is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God.
(Matthew 19:24)*

 See also 2 Corinthians 11:8, Mark 10:25 and Luke 18:25.

Sometimes exaggeration is viewed as less than truthful or less exact. However, exaggeration enables the writer to make his point with emotion and emphasis. Knowing when exaggeration is being used in the Bible will assist the student in understanding difficult texts.

4) Personification

Personification is a form of writing in which a non-living thing is spoken about as though it were a person.

... the mountains and hills will burst into song before you, and all the trees of the field will clap their hands. (Isaiah 55:12)

5) Guidelines for interpreting figures of speech

- When comparisons are made between unlike things, the comparison should be limited. There is a temptation to add more to the comparison than the author had in mind. For example: When the Bible says we are the salt of the earth, what aspect of salt did the

author have in mind? How salt is regarded today and how the author regarded it may be very different. Students must discover the historical and cultural context to understand a comparison.

- When a comparison is made, consider what that comparison meant to the intended readers. For example, shepherding sheep during Jesus' day may be different from how it is done today. Correct understanding comes when a student is familiar with the perspective of the author and the original hearers.



Lesson 6 Activity Assignments

Class Activity

1. Divide the class into two teams. Each team is assigned two chapters from 2 Timothy. As a team, find the figurative language in those chapters. Have the class come back together and tell what they found.
2. Discussion points/questions
 - What is figurative language?
 - Why is figurative language used?
 - Give examples of figurative language from your culture and language.
 - How should literal language be interpreted?

Student Activity

1. Read John 10:1-18. Is Jesus using figurative language? Use Diagram 6.1 to determine if He used figurative language. Write the figurative language (or word pictures) Jesus used?

Further Study Activity

1. Read John 10:1-18 again. Answer the following questions.
 - What is the literal meaning that Jesus intended when he chose to use picture talk?
 - Who are the sheep?
 - Who or what is the gate?
 - Who is the stranger?
 - Who is the thief?
 - Who is the good shepherd?
 - Who is the hired hand?
 - Write the reasons why you chose your answers to the questions above. Give reasons from the context.

Note to teacher: Appendix 4 contains the author's "List of figurative language used in 2 timothy" relating to the first class activity.

Diagram 6.1 Identifying figurative language

Questions to ask	Answer regarding John 10:1-18
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Does the surrounding context give clues that figurative language is used?	
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Does the text indicate that figurative language is used?	
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Does the text involve something immoral or a violation of other Scriptures if taken literally	
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Does the text make an unreasonable or absurd statement if it is taken literally?	
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• If the text is taken literally, will it contradict a clearer and consistent message of Scripture?	
<ul style="list-style-type: none">• What is the literal meaning that the author intended when he chose to use picture talk?	

INTERPRETATION: Types of Biblical Writing – Part 2

Objectives

- Continue to learn Step 2
- Learn about poetry and wisdom literature
- Learn about parables and allegories
- Learn about prophecy, symbols and types

Key Verses

*The disciples came to him and asked, "Why do you speak to the people in parables?" He replied, "The knowledge of the secrets of the kingdom of heaven has been given to you, but not to them. Whoever has will be given more, and he will have an abundance. Whoever does not have, even what he has will be taken from him. This is why I speak to them in parables: "Though seeing, they do not see; though hearing, they do not hear or understand."
(Matthew 13:10-13)*



The key verse answers the question: Why did Jesus speak in parables? Jesus wanted his followers to understand but He did not want those outside of the family of God to understand. This lesson continues to explain how to interpret various types of writing.



Step 2: Establish the various contexts

Steps of interpretation	
Step 1	Identify the Bible texts that are not understood
Step 2	Establish the various contexts: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Historical context • Grammatical & structural context ← • Types of Biblical writing
Step 3	Compare with other Scriptures
Step 4	Define words
Step 5	Consult other resources
Step 6	Conclude: Decide the meaning



A. Figurative language: Poetry & wisdom literature

Some versions (translations) of the Bible display poetry in a special way so that students will know that it is poetry. Luke 1:46-56 is a poem spoken by Mary. If these verses are displayed differently than other texts, the translation you are using probably displays all poetry in this helpful way. Verses 46-48 follow.

*And Mary said:
"My soul glorifies the Lord
and my spirit rejoices in God my Savior,
for he has been mindful
of the humble state of his servant.
From now on all generations will call me blessed,
(Luke 1:46-48)*

1) Poetry: definition and examples

a. Definition

Almost one half of the Old Testament can be considered poetry. Hebrew poets repeated the same thing more than once because it was a common way to emphasize important concepts. They built structured repetition into their poems.

The book of Psalms contains many poems that are prayers to God. Psalms is actually a hymn book which contains songs about God that could be used in public worship. Poetry in the Psalms was intended to be spoken or sung rather than just read. Figurative language (such as personification or exaggeration) is often used.

b. Examples of poetry in the Bible

Table 7.1 Places in the Bible that contain poetry		
Genesis 2:23	Genesis 9:25-27	Exodus 15:1-18
Numbers 6:24-26	Deuteronomy 32:1-43	Psalms
Job	Song of Songs	Ecclesiastes
Jonah 2:2-9	Most of Isaiah	Parts of Jeremiah
Luke 1:46-55	Romans 8	1 Corinthian 13

2) Wisdom literature: definition and examples

Wisdom literature was generally written by an older mature person giving advice to a younger person. The topics covered are usually about basic human experiences like birth, death, work, money, power and time. The following Bible books are examples of wisdom literature.

- Job
- Proverbs
- Psalm 37
- Psalm 90
- Ecclesiastes
- Song of Songs

a. Proverbs

A proverb is a type of wisdom literature which contains a short statement of moral truth. The book of Proverbs contains a collection of proverbs. Typically they are contrasting statements put in a parallel form. Often metaphors and similes are used. Some characteristics of a proverb follow.

- Proverbs use figurative language.
- Proverbs are meant to be practical and not the source of theology.
- Proverbs are worded in a way that makes them memorable but not technically exact.
- Proverbs provide practical advice for daily living.
- Proverbs are general truths in which exceptions do not negate the proverb’s truthful observation.

b. Proverbs are not

- Proverbs are not absolute guarantees from God but rather guidelines for good conduct. Consider Proverbs 22:26-27 and 29:12.
- Proverbs are not universal laws.

3) Interpretation guidelines for poetry and wisdom literature

- Do not interpret poetry the same way you would a narrative story. Remember that Hebrew poetry uses many types of figurative language and repetition. Good interpretation must deal with these forms correctly.
- Proverbs must be compared with the rest of Scripture.
- “Translate” the picture talk into your culture’s equivalent. For example, Proverbs 22:11 refers to a king. Some countries do not have kings; therefore, a cultural translation could be a president or a prime minister.



**B. Figurative language:
Parables & allegories**

1) Definition and examples of parables

A parable is a story used to illustrate a moral truth or answers a question. The story does not tell about a historical event. However, it usually involves a situation that is common to the lives of the hearers. A parable uses comparison and is similar to a metaphor. Parables have been called “heavenly stories with earthly meanings.” The word parable comes from the Greek word *parabole* which means “to place beside, to cast alongside.” A parable, then, is a story that teaches by placing one idea beside another.

Parables are designed to illustrate one particular point or theme. Each detail contained in a parable reinforces that one theme. The content of a parable is familiar to those to whom it is told. Many times, parables are later explained (interpreted) in Scripture. Jesus frequently uses parables as a teaching tool. About one third of Jesus’ teachings in the Bible are parables.

In Mark 4:26-29, Jesus speaks of the “parable of the growing seed.” In this parable, Jesus taught that spiritual growth is a continual, gradual process. His “picture talk” made this lesson unforgettable. In the right environment, the seed matures to its full potential. Likewise, God’s Word steadily reveals itself in the life of an obedient believer.

Other examples of parables are:

- The Parable of the Sower, the Seed and the Soils (Matthew 13:3-23, Mark 4:3-25 and Luke 8:5-15)
- The Parable of the Two Debtors (Luke 7:36-50)
- The Parable of the Good Samaritan (Luke 10:25-37)
- The Parable of the Unmerciful Servant (Matthew 18:21-35)

2) Definition and examples of an allegory

An allegory is a story that depends on the imagination of the hearer or reader. It can have more than one main theme. The actions contained in an allegory are not based on reality and are usually contrary to nature. Each detail of an allegory is a description or a picture of an event and has a meaning.

One example of an allegory is found in Judges 9:7-20. The people of Shechem, on their own initiative, choose to crown a king. This allegory is a story about “trees” that were going to crown a king. A thorn bush was finally crowned because none of the trees wanted to be king.

Other examples of allegories are:

- Jesus is the shepherd, believers are the sheep. (John 10)
- Jesus is the vine, God is the gardener and believers are the branches. (John 15)

3) Interpretation guidelines for parables & allegories

- Determine what circumstance or situation prompted the telling of the parable. Consider the smaller context and the book context.
- What are the facts or details of the parable or allegory? Identify and list the relevant and irrelevant details.
 - Relevant details always reinforce the parable’s main theme.

- Irrelevant details do not have significance to the main theme.
- Look for an interpretation of the parable or allegory given in the Bible. Be sure to interpret the meaning as it is plainly stated.
- If the meaning is not stated, look for the one main truth or intended meaning of the parable.
- Interpret the parable in accordance with the culture of the time it was told. Do not try to fit your own culture into it.



C. Figurative language: Prophecy, symbols, types

Prophetic writings are complex and hard to understand because they use various types of non-literal figurative language. Whole books are written on how to recognize and interpret prophecy, symbols and types. This lesson is only an introduction to the subject. To understand a prophecy, it is important to know whether it has already happened or if it will happen in the future, or both. Some prophesies in the Bible had two fulfillments. One fulfillment occurred soon after the time it was first written or spoken and then another occurred later in history.

1) Definition and examples of prophecy in the Bible

Prophecy means to speak the counsel of God. Because of this, the whole Bible can be considered prophecy because it communicates God's divine message. However, this lesson only concerns itself with predictive prophecy which predicts future events. Predictive prophecy occurs when God chooses to reveal the future before it happens. God knows the end from the beginning. There is prophecy throughout the whole Bible. Here is a short list of some predictive prophecies.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------|
| • Genesis 3:15, 12:2-3, 49:1-28 | • Daniel 7-8 |
| • Isaiah 11:6-9, 35:8-10 | • Nahum 1:4-5 |
| • Habakkuk 1:6-9 | • Jeremiah 4:23-31 |
| • Joel 2:28-32 | • Ezekiel 35-38 |
| • Matthew 24-25 | • Acts 1:10-11 |
| • Revelation 4-22 | • Luke 13:28-35 |

a. Why does the Bible contain predictive prophecy?

Prophecy in Scripture encourages people in the following ways:

- Prophecies that warn of God's judgment give people a chance to avoid destruction. When people responded correctly to His warning, He was merciful and did not punish them. (Jonah, Jeremiah 18:7-8, Ezekiel 33:13-15)
- A fulfilled prophecy builds faith. (John 13:19, 14:29, 16:4)
- Prophecies yet to be fulfilled encourage godly living. (1 Thessalonians 4:16-18, 2 Peter 3:10-14)
- All prophecies are intended to draw mankind to the Lord Jesus. (Romans 16:25-26 and John 5:39)

**b. Example of predictive prophecy which has been fulfilled:
Jesus' first coming**

Many prophecies in the Bible have already been fulfilled but they were predictive prophecies when they were first told. Examples of predictive prophecies about the coming Messiah, Jesus, and their fulfillments are shown in the following table.

Jesus, The Messiah:	Predicted in the Old Testament	Fulfilled in the New Testament
His ancestors	Jeremiah 23:5 Psalm 132:10-12	Matthew 1:6 Luke 3:23-31
Birthplace in Bethlehem	Micah 5:2	Matthew 2:1
Born of a virgin	Isaiah 7:14	Luke 1:34-35
Healer of the sick	Isaiah 35:5-6 Isaiah 53:4-5	Matthew 11:4-5
Hated by His own people	Psalm 69:7-8	John 1:11
Mocked and insulted	Psalm 22:6-8	Luke 23:35-39
Betrayed for 30 pieces of silver	Zechariah 11:12	Matthew 26:14-15
Died by crucifixion	Psalm 22:16	Luke 23:33
Soldiers gambled for Jesus' clothes while He was dying	Psalm 22:18	Luke 23:34
Raised from the dead	Psalm 16:10	Mark 16:6

c. Example of prophecy yet to be fulfilled: Jesus' second coming

Some prophetic messages are hard to understand and some are very easy to understand. An example of an easy-to-understand prophecy is Acts 1:11 which predicts how Jesus will come again.

“Men of Galilee,” they said, “why do you stand here looking into the sky? This same Jesus, who has been taken from you into heaven, will come back in the same way you have seen him go into heaven.” (Acts 1:11)

The following table gives some of the prophecies about Jesus' second coming that are yet to be fulfilled:

Examples of prophecies concerning Jesus' second coming	Scripture
Jesus' return will occur suddenly.	Matthew 24:27 Luke 17:24 Mark 13:33-37
Jesus' return will be unexpected.	Matthew 24:42-43 1 Thessalonians 5:2-5 2 Peter 3:10 Revelation 3:3, 16:15
No one can know the exact day or hour of His return.	Matthew 24:36, 42, 44 Mark 13:32
Jesus' return is sure.	2 Peter 3:8-10 Hebrews 10:37 James 5:7-8
Jesus' return will be visible to all.	Matthew 24:30 Mark 13:26 Revelation 1:7

2) Guidelines for interpreting prophecy

- Identify the literal and figurative language. Find its meaning using the guidelines for that type of writing.
- Does the text give the interpretation of the prophecy? If so, that will be its only meaning.
- Identify the period of time to which the prophecy is referring. For example, the time period may be one of the following:

- The prophet's own time and/or a future time
 - The captivity and/or restoration of Israel
 - The first coming of Christ and associated events
 - The second coming of Christ
 - The last days (or the end of times)
- Consult the rest of Scripture using cross references. The Bible will agree with other parts of Scripture. It will never contradict itself.
 - Consult appropriate books and ask godly people in the church for their understanding of the Scripture text. Be aware that there are many opinions about predictive prophecy. Some prophecies will not be completely understood by believers until they are fulfilled. It is better to accept this limitation than to risk making unsound interpretations that lead to doctrinal error.

3) Definition and examples of symbols

A symbol is something that stands for, or represents, something else. A country's flag is a symbol that represents that country. A symbol can be a sign of something else. In Genesis 9:13, a rainbow is a sign of God's covenant with his people. Numbers are sometimes used symbolically. (Revelation 13:18)

Examples of symbols in the Bible are:

- Wine represents the blood of Jesus. (Luke 22:20)
- Bread represents the body of Jesus. (Luke 22:19, 1 Corinthians 11:23-26)
- The number 7 represents completeness and perfection.
 - The world was created in six days and God rested on the seventh day. (Genesis 1:1-2:2)
- The number 40 represents testing.
 - The Israelites wandered in the desert for 40 years. (Exodus 16:35, Numbers 32:13)
 - It rained for 40 days and 40 nights during the flood. (Genesis 7:4)
 - Jesus fasted for 40 days before he was tempted by Satan. (Matthew 4:2)

4) Guidelines for interpreting symbols

- Often the Bible will give the interpretation of the symbol. For example, Jesus said that the wine represented His blood and the bread represented His body. (Luke 22:19-20)
- A symbol can have more than one meaning. For example, a “lion” signifies the tribe of Judah in Revelation 5:5. The lion also represents the devil as seen in 1 Peter 5:8, where the devil is called a “roaring lion.” Do not assume that a symbol used in one text means the same thing when it is used in another text.
- Find what the symbol meant to the culture of the author using it. Its symbolic meaning may be very different than it is in the culture of the Bible student today.

There can be several different symbols for the same person or thing. For example, Jesus is represented by a lion, a lamb and a branch. The Holy Spirit is symbolized by a dove, water, oil and wind.

5) Definition and examples of types

A type is different from a symbol because it is prophetic in nature. A type represents something or someone in the future. A type comes from the Greek word *tupos* which means “a mark formed by a blow that bares an image.” A type can also be called a pattern, shadow, example, copy or image. If a text uses these words, it may be an indicator that a type is being used. A few examples of types are shown in the following verses.

- Adam was a **type** of Christ.
*Nevertheless death reigned from Adam until Moses, even over those who had not sinned in the likeness of the offense of Adam, who is a **type** of Him who was to come. (Romans 5:14 New American Standard Bible ¹)*
- The law is a **shadow** of the good things to come.
*The law is only a **shadow** of the good things that are coming – not the realities themselves. ... (Hebrews 10:1)*
- The temple sanctuary is a **copy** and shadow of heaven.
*They serve at a sanctuary that is a **copy** and shadow of what is in heaven ... (Hebrews 8:5)*

6) Guidelines to interpret types

- Care should be taken when considering whether a person or thing is a type. If it is intended to be a type, the Scriptures will identify it as a type through calling it a pattern, shadow, copy, image or example.
- If the Bible does not indicate that something is a type, do not interpret it as a type.



Lesson 7 Activity Assignments

Class Activity

1. Read the “Parable of Sower, the Seed and the Soils” in Matthew 13:3-23, Mark 4:3-25 and Luke 8:5-15. Answer the following questions.
 - What prompted the parable? (Read the verses prior to the parable.)
 - What are the significant/important details of the parable?
 - Is there an interpretation of the parable given? If so, what do the important details mean?
 - What is the main message of the parable?

Student Activity

1. Read Psalm 23 and identify the figurative language. Write the message of this Psalm as seen through the figurative language.

Further Study Activity

1. Review the section in this lesson about proverbs. In light of these guidelines, read Proverbs 10:1-14. Write an explanation of the wisdom that is being taught in these verses.

¹ *New American Standard Bible*, (A. J. Holman Company, Philadelphia), 1976.

INTERPRETATION: Compare, Define, Consult

Objectives

- Learn the skill of comparison in studying words and topics
- Learn how to use a concordance
- Learn how to define Biblical words
- Practice using all the steps of interpretation



Key Verse

My son, if you accept my words and store up my commands within you, turning your ear to wisdom and applying your heart to understanding and if you call out for insight and cry aloud for understanding, and if you look for it as for silver and search for it as for hidden treasure, then you will understand the fear of the LORD and find the knowledge of God. For the LORD gives wisdom and from his mouth come knowledge and understanding. (Proverbs 2:1-6)

The key verse compares finding wisdom to looking for hidden treasure in the ground. Digging out diamonds, gold or silver from the earth is hard work. It takes many shovel loads of dirt and rock to find the most valuable

treasure. This lesson covers Steps 3 through 6 of interpretation. Students will learn methods to dig out understanding and wisdom from Scripture.



Step 3: Compare with other Scriptures

Steps of interpretation	
Step 1	Identify the Bible texts that are not understood
Step 2	Establish the various contexts: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Historical context • Grammatical & structural context • Literature type
Step 3	Compare with other Scriptures ←
Step 4	Define words ←
Step 5	Consult other resources ←
Step 6	Conclude: Decide the meaning ←



Skill of comparison – Studying words and topics

A. Ways to compare Bible texts

Using the skill of comparison, students can determine if an interpretation is in harmony with the rest of Scripture. There are two basic methods of comparison that can give insight into Biblical texts.

- Comparing a word or text with the same word or concept in other parts of the Bible. The primary tool used to do this is a concordance. When one verse is compared to another verse in the Bible, this is called a cross reference.
- Comparing a Bible text with other translations or paraphrases of the Bible. Languages that have several good translations of the Bible allow this kind of comparison. People who can speak and read more than one language may also be able to compare various Bible versions in the languages they know.

B. Guidelines for comparing Bible texts

When comparing Scripture with Scripture, consider the following guidelines:

- Biblical texts that are clear and understood should be used to interpret texts that are unclear.
- Truths stated several times give understanding to things mentioned only once or twice.
- Core doctrines interpret secondary teachings.

Note: If you do not have a concordance in your language, skip the next section. A concordance is just a giant list. You can build a concordance by listing all the verses that contain a given word in your Bible translation. Bible students who are very familiar with the whole Bible can still compare one verse with another through their memory.



C. Concordance: a basic study tool

1) What is a concordance?

A concordance is an alphabetical listing of words used in the Bible. Each word entry is followed by a list of Scripture references. A Scripture reference describes where in the Bible a text may be found. If you are unclear about references, refer to Appendix 2, “How to look up a verse.”

A concordance shows the Scripture reference and a small part of the text. Diagram 8.1 shows a sample of what is found when the word “soldier(s)” is looked up in a *New International Version* (NIV) concordance. A list of all the references for “soldier(s)” can be found at the end of this lesson.

Diagram 8.1 Example of a concordance

1 Cor	9:7	as a <u>soldier</u> at his own expense?
Php	2:25	fellow worker and fellow <u>soldier</u>
2 Tim	2:3	with us like a good <u>soldier</u> of Christ Jesus
2 Tim	2:4	a <u>soldier</u> gets involved in civilian affairs

Adapted from: *The Complete English Concordance to the New International Version*¹

2) How to use a concordance

a. Concordances must match your translation.

Major versions of the Bible are different because translators have chosen slightly different words to represent the original language. This will not change the Bible's message or God's ability to speak to believers through its pages. However, when using a concordance, always use the version that matches the translation of your Bible. For example, if you read the *New International Version* of the Bible, use a concordance relating to the *New International Version*. If the concordance and version do not match, confusion may result.

b. Note each place the word being researched is used.

The following list is an example of the places where the word "false" is found in the NIV Bible version.

Ezekiel 21:23	Ezekiel 21:29	Ezekiel 22:28
Hosea 10:4	Amos 2:4	Micah 6:11
Habbakkuk 2:3	Zechriah 10:2	Malachi 2:6
Matthew 7:15	Matthew 15:19	Matthew 19:18
Matthew 24:11	Matthew 24:24	Matthew 26:59
Matthew 26:60	Mark 10:19	Mark 13:22
Mark 14:57	Luke 6:26	Luke 18:20
John 1:47	John 7:18	Acts 6:13
Acts 13:6	1 Corinthians 15:15	2 Corinthians 11:13
2 Corinthians 11:26	Galatians 2:4	Philippians 1:18
Colossians 2:18	Colossians 2:23	1 Timothy 1:3
1 Timothy 6:3	2 Peter 2:1	1 John 4:1
Revelation 2:2	Revelation 16:13	Revelation 19:20
Revelation 20:10		

c. Look up references that apply to the word or topic being studied.

d. Write down what you learn from each reference.

For example, you may notice that the word "false" is used often in descriptions of those who try to harm the church, like "false prophets," "false apostles" and "false teachers." This may be an important key to understanding why translators used a particular word in some contexts.

Note: If you read English and have access to English concordances, read Appendix 2, "How to use various concordances." This information describes how to use various types of concordances in greater detail.



D. Compare with other Bible versions

Having more than one version (translation) of the Bible in a language allows students to use the skill of comparison. Some languages have only one translation of the Bible. There are groups of people that still do not have a translation of the Bible in their language.

All versions used for comparison should be widely accepted by the church. Beware of books used by followers of false teachers that look very much like Bibles but which have been corrupted to support false doctrine. Examples of two false translations are: *The Joseph Smith Translation of the King James Bible* and *The New World Translation*.

Each translation (version) differs slightly from others because of slight variations in the way some words are translated from the original language. As an example, look at the way 2 Timothy 1:14 is translated in several English Bible translations. Note the word “guard” in each case.

Version	Translation of 2 Timothy 1:14
<i>New International Version (NIV)</i>	Guard the good deposit that was entrusted to you – guard it with the help of the Holy Spirit who lives in us.
<i>King James Version (KJV)</i>	That good thing which was committed to you, keep by the Holy Spirit who dwells in us.
<i>The Amplified Bible</i> ²	Guard and keep [with the greatest care] the precious and excellently adapted [Truth] which has been entrusted [to you], by the [help of the] Holy Spirit Who makes His home in us.
<i>The New Living Translation</i> ³	With the help of the Holy Spirit who lives within us, carefully guard what has been entrusted to you.
<i>New American Standard</i> ⁴	Guard , through the Holy Spirit who dwells in us, the treasure which has been entrusted to you.
<i>New Testament in Modern English</i> ⁵	Take the greatest care of the treasures which were entrusted to you by the Holy Spirit who lives within us.
<i>The Message</i> ⁶	Guard this precious thing placed in your custody by the Holy Spirit who works in us.



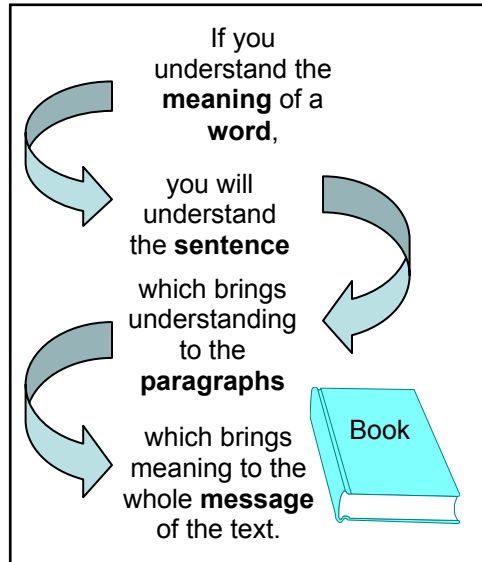
Step 4: Define words

The fourth step of interpretation is defining words. The following illustration shows how an understanding of the words will eventually lead to a fuller understanding of the whole Biblical text.

Lesson 4 taught the skills of identifying the details. By completing a Bible Text Worksheet, students learned how to identify important repeated words and phrases.

A topical list is created when the facts associated with each use of an important word is written. A topical list is the beginning of a word study. Review Lesson 4 to refresh your memory on the skills associated with making a topical list.

Diagram 8.2
Words are important to meaning



A. Research tools used in a word study

Much time and effort can be saved if concordances, dictionaries and word study books are available in the student's language. Word study is possible, however, using the Bible alone. Having many books does not ensure understanding the Bible. God can speak to those who do not have many study aids. Use what you have and do not worry about what you do not have.

B. How to do a word study

The following table provides a method for doing a word study.

Note to students: Do as many of the steps as you can with tools available to you.

Step	Activity	Tool
1.	Choose a word to study. If doing a topical study, find the various ways the topic is used in the Bible.	None
2.	Find every place in the book you are studying where the word occurs.	Concordance or Bible Text Worksheet
3.	Identify the meaning of the word in your language. Write your findings.	Dictionary
4.	Compare how the word was translated in other Bible translations or paraphrases, if available.	Various Bible versions
5.	Determine how the word is used in other places in the Bible. Write your findings.	Concordance
6.	Identify the Biblical definition of the word from a book that provides definitions from the original language, if available. Write your findings.	Dictionary of Biblical words
Note: If a concordance is available to you, look at the section on "How to use a concordance" in Appendix 2.		
7.	Find the other places in the Bible where this original word was used. Note: This list may be different than the list of references you obtained in Step 5. Write your findings.	Concordance listing words from Greek and Hebrew
8.	Review your findings and determine the meaning of the word. Write a summary of your research.	None

C. Topical and character studies

A topical study and a character study use almost the same process as a word study.

1) Topical study

A topical study uses the same steps as a word study except for Step 1. After choosing your topic, identify the various ways the Bible describes the topic. For example, if choosing to study “false teachers,” start by researching the following words: false, teacher(s), prophet(s), apostle(s), deceiver(s), doctrine, lies and error.

2) Character study

Step	Activity	Tool
1.	Select a person to study.	None
2.	Find every place in the Bible where this person’s name is used. Write your findings.	Concordance
3.	Read the references several times. With each reading, look for: <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Facts about the person• Their timeline of activities• Character qualities (good and bad) Write your findings.	Bible
4.	Consider how God worked with the person and their response.	Meditation
5.	Review your findings. Write a summary of your research. The next step, <u>application</u> , is taught in Lessons 10-13.	None



Step 5: Consult other resources

Step 5 of interpretation is consulting other resources relating to a Scripture text. Resources can include books, sermons, radio programs or just good conversations with other mature believers. The skill of consulting makes wise use of these resources.

A. Consulting other books about the Bible


A good way to gain insight into Scripture is to read various commentaries on a particular Scripture. A commentary is a book or article written by a person who gives an opinion or an interpretation of a portion of Scripture.

The Lord has placed many wise and gifted teachers in His church. A diligent student can learn many things from their speaking and writing. However, students should prayerfully consider whether the commentary's interpretation is sound and right. Just because something is written in a book does not make it right.

B. Consulting other mature believers

Another way to verify a Biblical interpretation is to discuss it with other mature believers. If you seek wisdom from others, however, be sure they have godly character and good works. Consider Paul's advice to Timothy!

But as for you, continue in what you have learned and have become convinced of, because you know those from whom you learned it. (2 Timothy 3:14)

 Read also Ephesians 4:11-15.



Step 6: Conclude: Decide the meaning

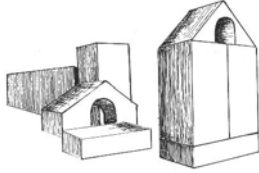
After completing the hard work of researching the meaning, it is time for the last step of interpretation: Conclude: Decide the meaning. In this step, the student prayerfully determines the text's meaning. The following simple activities are designed to help with this process:

- Start with prayer, asking the Holy Spirit to help you understand.
- Review all the notes you have taken in Steps 1-5.
- Carefully determine what the text means.
- Write a brief summary of your understanding.
- If possible, review your findings with another trusted believer. Consider the following wisdom from the book of Proverbs:

Listen to advice and accept instruction, and in the end you will be wise. (Proverbs 19:20)

The way of a fool seems right to him, but a wise man listens to advice. (Proverbs 12:15)

Putting it all together for interpretation



Here is an example from 2 Timothy of how the six steps of interpretation can help determine the meaning of a difficult text. Each step is like a block that builds on the other steps, forming a correct interpretation.



Step 1: Identify the Bible text not understood

Bible text not understood: 2 Timothy 1:13-14

What you heard from me, keep as the pattern of sound teaching, with faith and love in Christ Jesus. Guard the good deposit that was entrusted to you – guard it with the help of the Holy Spirit who lives in us. (2 Timothy 1:13-14)

1. What is the pattern of sound teaching?
2. What is sound teaching?
3. What is the good deposit?
4. What does guard mean? Guard what?
5. What is the message of this text?



Step 2: Establish the various contexts

Historical & structural context:

Paul is writing a letter to Timothy from prison in Rome (1:1-2, 1:16-17, 2:9). Paul believes he is near the end of his life on earth (4:6-8, 16). This letter's tone is very personal (1:2, 2:1). Paul was writing to give Timothy some last instructions. He encouraged Timothy to faithfully and effectively serve Jesus.

Writing type(s):

A letter.



Step 3: Compare with other Scriptures

a. Compare with other Bible texts

A concordance was used to find every instance in the New Testament where the four words listed below are used. The references provide a short list of texts that give understanding to the words.

Pattern	Sound teaching/doctrine	Guard	Deposit
Acts 7:44	1 Timothy 1:10	Matthew 10:17	2 Cor 1:22
Romans 5:14	1 Timothy 6:3	Matthew 16:6, 11-12	2 Cor 5:5
Romans 12:2	2 Timothy 4:3	Mark 13:9, 23, 33	Eph 1:14
Php 3:17	Titus 1:9	Luke 4:10	
2 Timothy 1:13	Titus 1:13	Luke 12:1, 15	
Hebrews 8:5	Titus 2:1	Acts 20:31	
	Titus 2:2	1 Cor 16:13	
		Philippians 4:7	
		1 Timothy 6:20	
		2 Timothy 4:15	
		2 Peter 3:17	

b. Compare with other translations

The New Living Translation ³

Hold on to the pattern of right teaching you learned from me. And remember to live in the faith and love that you have in Christ Jesus. With the help of the Holy Spirit who lives within us, carefully guard what has been entrusted to you. (2 Timothy 1:13-14)

The Amplified Bible ²

Hold fast and follow the pattern of wholesome and sound teaching which you have heard from me, in [all] the faith and love which are [for us] in Christ Jesus. Guard and keep [with the greatest care] the precious and excellently adapted [Truth] which has been entrusted [to you], by the [help of the] Holy Spirit Who makes His home in us. (2 Timothy 1:13-14)



Step 4: Define word: Find the meaning of the word

Pattern

English definition: “a form or model proposed for imitation”⁷

Greek word: hupotupoosis, hupotupooseos, hee

Greek definition: “a. an outline, sketch, brief and summary exposition b. an example, pattern”

(*Thayer's Greek Lexicon, Electronic Database*)⁸

Sound teaching

English definition: for sound: “free from flaw, defect or decay; solid firm and stable”⁷

Greek word: “hugiainoo”

Greek definition: “to be sound, to be well, to be in good health: properly.”

(*Thayer's Greek Lexicon, Electronic Database*)⁸

Guard - NIV (Keep - KJV)

English definition: “To protect from danger by watchful attention. Make secure, to tend to carefully, to watch over so as to prevent escape, disclosure or indiscretion.”⁷

Greek definition: Active, to guard; to watch, to keep watch:

Greek word: “phulasso”

Greek definition: “probably from NT:5443 through the idea of isolation; to watch, i.e., be on guard (literally or figuratively); by implication, to preserve, obey, avoid: KJV - beware, keep (self), observe, save. Compare NT:5083”

(*Biblesoft's New Exhaustive Strong's Numbers and Concordance with Expanded Greek-Hebrew Dictionary*)⁹

Good Deposit - NIV (good thing - KJV)

English definition: “Something placed for safekeeping”⁷

Greek word: kalos (kal-os');

Greek definition: “Of uncertain affinity; properly, beautiful, but chiefly (figuratively) good (literally or morally), i.e. valuable or virtuous (for appearance or use)”

(*Biblesoft's New Exhaustive Strong's Numbers and Concordance with Expanded Greek-Hebrew Dictionary*)⁹



Step 5: Consult other resources

Source # 1: Matthew Henry's Commentary

"He exhorts him to hold fast the form of sound words, v. 13. 1."Have a form of sound words" (so it may be read), "a short form, a catechism, an abstract of the first principles of religion, according to the Scriptures, a scheme of sound words, a brief summary of the Christian faith, in a proper method, drawn out by thyself from the holy Scriptures for thy own use;" or, rather, by the form of sound words I understand the holy Scriptures themselves." (*Matthew Henry's Commentary on the Whole Bible: New Modern Edition, Electronic Database*)¹⁰

Source #2: The Wycliffe Bible Commentary

"2 Tim 1:3-18 3) Challenge To Hold Fast the Form of Sound Words. 1:13, 14. The necessity of putting the basic outline of doctrine in concrete, easily remembered form is reiterated by Paul (cf. Rom 6:17) in another imperative (2 Tim 1:13): Hold fast the form of sound words, or the outline of doctrine. The confession of faith was characteristic of the Church from earliest times, and was soon formulated in the Apostles' Creed. In Christ and in his Spirit are the faith(fullness) and love to insure our keeping the faith. 14. Good thing means good deposit. The same word is used in verse 12 and in the LXX at Lev 6:2, 4. The Spirit will keep the deposit. The intimate connection of the work of Christ and that of the Spirit are evident here as elsewhere in Paul's writings (Rom 8:9-11; 2 Cor 3:17-18)." (*The Wycliffe Bible Commentary, Electronic Database*)¹¹

Source #3: Barne's Notes - 2 Timothy 1:14

"That good thing which was committed unto thee keep by the Holy Ghost which dwelleth in us. [That good thing which was committed unto thee;]. The reference here in the phrase, "that good thing committed to thee," is to the sound Christian doctrine with which he had been entrusted, and which he was required to transmit to others. "[Keep by the Holy Ghost] By the aid of the Holy Spirit. One of the best methods of preserving the knowledge and the love of truth is to cherish the influences of the Holy Spirit." (*Barne's Notes*)¹²



Step 6: Conclude: Decide the meaning

What you heard from me, keep as the pattern of sound teaching, with faith and love in Christ Jesus. Guard the good deposit that was entrusted to you – guard it with the help of the Holy Spirit who lives in us. (2 Timothy 1:13-14)

1) What is the pattern of sound teaching?

Paul taught Timothy his lifestyle and his teaching. The word “pattern” refers to an outline, sketch or example. This “pattern” is also available to believers who diligently study Paul’s letters and the rest of Scripture. Paul said: “*with faith and love in Jesus Christ.*” Paul was concerned both with what Timothy taught and “how” he taught it. Leaders need to teach good doctrine in a loving manner, having faith in God to work in the people they are teaching.

2) What is sound teaching?

Sound teaching is based on the Bible. It is taught by believers teaching through the guidance of the Holy Spirit. It is balanced and consistent with the whole Bible. It is teaching that other mature Christians also believe to be accurate.

3) What is the good deposit?

The good deposit is the good teaching Timothy received from Paul and the other apostles. This includes the gospel. The immediate context seems to indicate sound teaching or right doctrine.

4) What does guard mean? Guard what?

Guard means to protect from danger by watchful attention. It was often used in the context of protecting valuable possessions from thieves. Paul was aware that there were false teachers spreading corrupt doctrine. Timothy is told to guard the good teaching he received and to be watchful that it is not corrupted through the influence of false teachers.

5) What is the message of this text?

Timothy is told to hold onto and guard the teaching he received from Paul against the corruption of false teachers. Timothy will need the Holy Spirit to help him guard it and to teach it in love and in faith.



Lesson 8 Activity Assignments

Class Activity

1. Divide the class into four groups. Assign each group to study one of the following words from 2 Timothy 1:13-14: “pattern,” “sound teaching,” “guard” and “deposit.”
 - Each group is to read the verses associated with the assigned word listed in Table 8.5, Step 3 of the “Putting it all together” section of this lesson.
 - Review the definitions provided in Step 4.
 - Each group should give a summary of what they think these words mean after doing a word study using the resources provided in this lesson.
2. Discussion points/questions
 - Discuss what resources are available to the class to do in depth word and topical studies. How many students have a concordance? How many students have other Biblical resources?
 - If these resources are not available, what can be done to have a sound understanding of Scripture?
 - Discuss and answer any questions that the students may have about this lesson.

Student Activity

1. Do a topical study on “false teachers” using the process shown in Table 8.3.
 - Use the references provided in Table 8.1 to look up verses that have to do with false teachers, false brothers, false doctrines and false prophets.
 - In addition to these texts, Read the following verses: 2 Peter 2, Acts 20:29, 2 Timothy 3:5-9 and Matthew 24:11, 24.
 - What did you learn about false teachers? Make a list of your conclusions.

Further Study Activity

1. Do a word study on “soldier(s) using the following references. List what you learned about “soldiers” from these verses.
2. If you have a concordance, choose a word from 2 Timothy and do a word study on it. If you have other resources, use them also. Write a summary about what you learned about that word.

SOLDIERS (SOLDIER) ¹

Matthew	8:9	under authority, with <u>soldiers</u> under me
	27:27	Then the governor's <u>soldier</u> took Jesus
	27:27	gathered the whole company of <u>soldiers</u>
	28:12	they gave the <u>soldier</u> a large sum
Mark	28:15	So the <u>soldier</u> took the money and did
	15:16	The <u>soldier</u> led Jesus away
Luke	15:16	together the whole company of <u>soldiers</u>
	3:14	Then some <u>soldiers</u> asked him,
John	7:8	under authority, with <u>soldiers</u> under me
	23:11	Then Herod and his <u>soldier</u> ridiculed
	23:36	<u>soldier</u> also came up and mocked him.
	18:3	guiding a detachment of <u>soldiers</u>
	18:12	Then the detachment of <u>soldiers</u>
	19:2	The <u>soldier</u> twisted together a crown
Acts	19:16	So the <u>soldier</u> took charge of Jesus.
	19:23	When the <u>soldier</u> crucified Jesus,
	19:32	So this is what the <u>soldier</u> did.
	29:32	<u>soldier</u> therefore came and broke the legs
	19:34	one of the <u>soldiers</u> pierced Jesus' side
	10:7	one of his <u>soldiers</u> who was a devout man
	12:4	by four squads of four <u>soldiers</u> each.
	12:6	Peter was sleeping between two <u>soldiers</u> ,
	12:18	a great commotion among the <u>soldiers</u>
	21:32	and <u>soldiers</u> and ran down to the crowd
	21:32	saw the commander and his <u>soldiers</u> ,
	21:35	had to be carried by the <u>soldier</u> .
	21:37	as the <u>soldiers</u> were about to take Paul
	23:23	a detachment of two hundred <u>soldiers</u> ,
23:31	So the <u>soldiers</u> carrying out their orders,	
27:31	Paul said to the centurion and the <u>soldiers</u>	
27:32	So the <u>soldiers</u> cut the ropes that held	
27:42	The <u>soldiers</u> planned to kill the prisoners	
28:16	by himself, with a <u>soldier</u> to guard him	
1 Corinthians	9:7	as a <u>soldier</u> at his own expense?
Philippians	2:25	fellow worker and fellow <u>soldier</u>
2 Timothy	2:3	with us like a good <u>soldier</u> of Christ Jesus
2 Timothy	2:4	a <u>soldier</u> gets involved in civilian affairs
Philemon	2	to Archippus our fellow <u>soldier</u>

- 1 *The Complete English Concordance to the New International Version*, Edward W. Goodrich & John R. Kohlenberger III (Regency Reference Library, Zondervan Publishing House, Grand Rapids, Michigan), Copyright © 1981 by Zondervan Corporation.
- 2 *The Amplified Bible*, (Zondervan Corporation), 1987.
- 3 *The New Living Translation*, (Tyndale House), 1999.
- 4 *New American Standard Bible*, the Lockman Foundation (LaHara, Ca), (A. J. Holman Company, Philadelphia), 1976.
- 5 *The New Testament in Modern English*, J. B. Phillips, (Touchstone), 1995.
- 6 *The Message*, Eugene H. Peterson, (NavPress), 2002.
- 7 *Webster's Ninth New Collegiate Dictionary*, 1977
- 8 *Thayer's Greek Lexicon, Electronic Database*.
- 9 *Biblesoft's New Exhaustive Strong's Numbers and Concordance with Expanded Greek-Hebrew Dictionary*, Copyright © 1994, Biblesoft and International Bible Translators, Inc.
- 10 *Matthew Henry's Commentary on the Whole Bible: New Modern Edition, Electronic Database*, Copyright © 1991 by Hendrickson Publishers, Inc).
- 11 *The Wycliffe Bible Commentary, Electronic Database*, Copyright © 1962 by Moody Press.
- 12 *Barnes Notes*

Other Resources mentioned in this lesson:

- New American Standard Exhaustive Concordance of the Bible, Hebrew-Aramaic and Greek Dictionaries*, Robert L. Thomas, ThD., General Editor (Holman, Nashville, Tennessee), 1981.
- Vine's Expository Dictionary of Biblical Words*, (Thomas Nelson Publishers), 1985.
- Strong's Exhaustive Concordance, Complete and Unabridged*, (Word Books, Waco, Texas), 1977.

INTERPRETATION: Avoiding Error

Objectives

- Learn the definition of doctrinal error
- Learn the reasons for doctrinal error
- Learn the results of doctrinal error
- Learn to identify doctrinal error
- Practice the skill of identifying doctrinal error



Key Verse

I know your deeds, your hard work and your perseverance. I know that you cannot tolerate wicked men, that you have tested those who claim to be apostles but are not, and have found them false. (Revelation 2:2)

In this key verse, Jesus sends a special message to the church of Ephesus. He praises them for four things that they are doing. The church was effective in their work for God, even when they faced great difficulties. They adopted correct doctrine and did not allow it to be poisoned by false teachings. Those claiming to be apostles were tested against certain strict standards. How did this church protect itself from doctrinal error? What was the test that they used? This lesson will help

students become aware of the dangers of doctrinal error and how to recognize it.



Skill of recognizing interpretation error

A. What is doctrinal error?

1) Doctrines are what we believe

Doctrines are teachings that we believe to be true. These beliefs are the references we use for making choices in our lives. Our doctrines are revealed to others by the way we live. A hypocrite is someone who claims to have a doctrine but lives in a way that denies it. (Matthew 23:27-28)

The Bible is a believer's final authority for living and doctrines. By studying it carefully and being obedient to the Holy Spirit within, every believer can learn correct doctrines. These doctrines will agree with the essential core doctrines of the church. (2 Timothy 3:16-17) Doctrinal error is a false understanding of truths in the Bible. People who adopt Biblical error are either mistaken about correct doctrine or are deliberately resisting it.

2) The core doctrines of Christianity

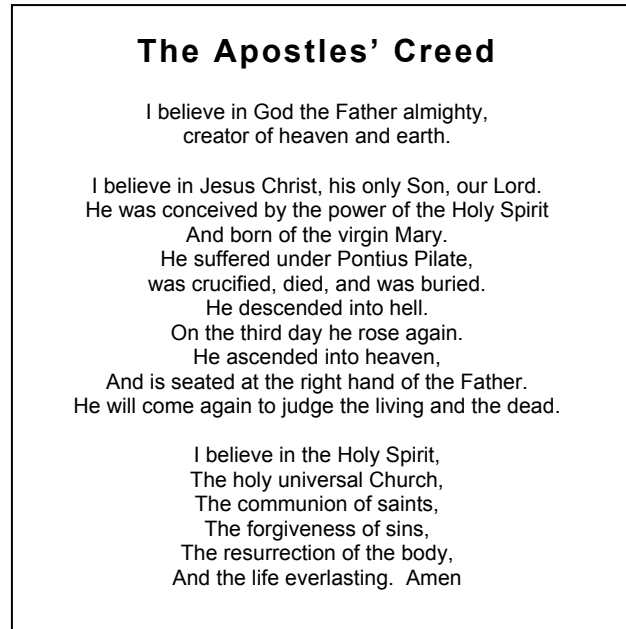
The core doctrines of Christianity are those teachings essential for a correct understanding of God, His plan of salvation and how to live a life pleasing to Him. Students were introduced to them in the first manual, *Basic Beliefs of Christianity*. Some examples are:

- God is eternal and all-powerful.
- God exists in three persons: Father, Son and Holy Spirit.
- God will judge everyone.
- Salvation comes by repentance and faith in Jesus alone.
- The Bible is the Word of God.

Core doctrines are foundational teachings of Christianity that cannot be compromised. They come from the doctrines taught by Jesus, His apostles and the prophets (Ephesians 2:19-20) in the Bible. Core doctrines are passed down to each new generation of believers through the Bible and the church. Some of Christianity's essential doctrines were

listed in a document called the Apostles' Creed. It was written sometime during the third century. Diagram 9.1, the Apostles' Creed, is shown as a reference.

Diagram 9.1 The Apostles' Creed



Believers throughout history have been willing to die for Scripture and the doctrines found in it. These core doctrines of Christianity come from clear, repeated Scriptures. They construct a perfectly balanced framework, supporting genuine faith in the one, true God. If even one of these core doctrines is perverted or replaced, it negatively affects all the others.

Example: What if Mary was not really a virgin and Jesus had an earthly father? Here are some logical results:

1. Jesus was only a man and He sinned by claiming to be God.
2. If Jesus lied about being God, He then broke the first and second commandment found in Exodus 20:2-7, making him a sinner.
3. A sinful Jesus could not offer Himself for the sins of the world.
4. If Jesus cannot really save us, then we are still lost sinners.

The importance of preserving core doctrines can be seen in this short list of results. Nothing can be added to core doctrines or subtracted from them without affecting all of them. This is why believers must know them thoroughly and be ready to explain them to others.

3) The church is the guardian of correct doctrine

God's message of hope to the world through the Bible is the gospel. (Ephesians 1:13) This gospel has the power to set people free from their sins and give them eternal life. A gospel based on doctrinal error, however, is powerless. (Galatians 1:6-7 and 1 Corinthians 1:17)

Biblical truth is constantly under attack in the world. There are many enemies of God's message (James 4:4) and people do not always receive it gladly. (Acts 19:8-9) Satan also works to block God's message or distort it wherever he can. Jesus created His church to receive the truth, to live the truth, to teach the truth and to guard the truth of God until He returns. Paul wrote to Timothy:

if I am delayed, you will know how people ought to conduct themselves in God's household, which is the church of the living God, the pillar and foundation of the truth. (1 Timothy 3:15)

Paul calls the church "the pillar and foundation of the truth." A pillar holds something up and a foundation keeps it from changing its location. The church is a pillar because it has been given the job of proclaiming (holding up) God's truth correctly to the world. The unmovable foundation of the church is mentioned in Ephesians:

Consequently, you are no longer foreigners and aliens, but fellow citizens with God's people and members of God's household, built on the foundation of the apostles and prophets, with Christ Jesus himself as the chief cornerstone. (Ephesians 2:19-20)

The true church is a foundation that will never move. Ultimately, the church is built on Jesus, the "rock" of Romans 9:33. 📖 Read also 1 Peter 2:4-8.

4) Doctrinal differences are not always doctrinal error

Not all doctrinal differences are dangerous. Augustine, a leader in the early Church, said: "In essentials, unity; in non-essentials, liberty; in all

things, love.” A mature believer is able to distinguish essential (core) doctrines from non-essential doctrines. Believers should exhibit pure love for other believers despite minor differences. They must resist the temptation to argue with other believers over things that have little consequence. Examples of non-essential doctrines are:

- Style of clothing to wear
- Type of music used during church services
- How often to have the Lord’s Supper

Arguments over non-essential doctrines are not usually motivated by a love for truth. The sin of pride is usually at work. If believers allow minor differences to grow, Satan will use them to cause divisions that weaken the church. Fighting among believers always hurts the church’s ability to model God’s love to the world.

📖 Read Romans 14, Matthew 5:14-16, 1 Peter 2:12, Hebrews 10:24-25, 2 Peter 1:6-7 and Ephesians 4:1-3.

B. What are the reasons for doctrinal error?

Error usually affects doctrine through these four ways:

1. Ignorance of Scripture
2. Interpreting Scripture based on ineffective study
3. Interpreting Scripture based on willful distortion
4. Accepting the false teaching of others without verifying it through personal discovery Bible study.

1) Ignorance opens the door to doctrinal error

Many people are ignorant of correct Christian doctrine because they are unbelievers, refusing to believe the gospel. (Ephesians 4:18) Those who truly believe the gospel are spiritually reborn into God’s eternal family. However, unless these believers become students of the Bible, they will remain spiritually immature and dependent on others for doctrine.

Ignorance of the Bible is difficult to overcome where Bibles are few or people cannot read. Owning a Bible is illegal and dangerous in some locations. In situations like these, Christian evangelists and teachers have an urgent responsibility to possess correct doctrine and to teach it well. (1 Timothy 4:16 and 2 Timothy 4:2) Without the ability to conduct personal study however, believers are like spoon-fed babies and remain dependent on others for Biblical truth. Every effort must be made to teach these people how to read and study Scripture, and also to make Bibles

available for them. This important work will provide new believers with the liberty to find life and truth in God's Word for themselves.

2) Improper Bible study can lead to doctrinal error

Ignorance of correct doctrine can also exist where believers have Bibles but do not know how to study effectively. Teachers in the church may be immature and untaught themselves. Sometimes believers are not diligent students of Scripture because they are lazy. They may not be maintaining an intimate relationship with God and His Word.

When believers are immature and careless in Biblical study, they have little defense against doctrinal error. Paul talked to believers in this condition.

In fact, though by this time you ought to be teachers, you need someone to teach you the elementary truths of God's word all over again. You need milk, not solid food! Anyone who lives on milk, being still an infant, is not acquainted with the teaching about righteousness. But solid food is for the mature, who by constant use have trained themselves to distinguish good from evil. (Hebrews 5:12-14)

Good teachers are not enough. All believers should be diligent students of God's Word, eager to learn and to grow. In this manual, the discovery method of Bible study has been introduced. Using its steps and principles is an excellent way for believers to understand and apply the truths of Scripture. When less accurate methods of Bible study are used, the results can be disappointing, or even dangerous. Discovery study will minimize the effects of three things that work against every believer's desire to correctly understand Scripture. They are:

- Man's old sinful nature
- Ungodly cultural influences
- Satan and his demons

3) Enemies are at war with correct doctrine

Why is it difficult to understand and obey the truths found in Scripture? It is because of the effects of sin and Satan. These enemies attempt to hold back every believer who desires to follow God.

a. The enemy of a sinful nature

The old, sinful nature in everyone wants to resist God's authority. Whenever this old nature is allowed to enter into the process of Bible study, it can affect interpretation. Effective study must be done objectively, humbly, prayerfully and with an obedient heart. This can only be accomplished in the power and strength God gives. Believers choose the new life that God has given them and leave their old, sinful nature behind. Ephesians explains this.

You were taught, with regard to your former way of life, to put off your old self, which is being corrupted by its deceitful desires; to be made new in the attitude of your minds; and to put on the new self, created to be like God in true righteousness and holiness. (Ephesians 4:22-24)

Believers can “put on the new self, created to be like God in true righteousness and holiness” only by faith. They must recognize the new nature God has given them. They must also trust Him to accomplish something that cannot be done by mere human strength. If believers do not study in this way, their “old self” may draw them away from truth.

📖 Read Romans 8:11, 2 Corinthians 5:17, Colossians 3:7-10 and Romans 15:13.

b. The enemy of spiritual pride

Developing the skills of interpreting Scripture is an exciting adventure. When diligent study of the Bible reveals eternal truth, it is like hearing the voice of God through its pages. However, students must be careful to remain prayerful and humble at all times. Pride is a danger even when digging for spiritual treasure. A good student wants to learn as much as possible about God and His Word but knows that he is not in competition with others. A competitive desire to be the first one to find a unique, new meaning in Scripture has tempted some students to stretch and distort their interpretations. This is often how doctrinal errors begin. Peter warns his readers:

Bear in mind that our Lord's patience means salvation, just as our dear brother Paul also wrote you with the wisdom that God gave him. He writes the same way in all his letters, speaking in them of these matters. His letters contain some things that are hard to understand, which ignorant and unstable people distort, as they do the other Scriptures, to their own destruction. (2 Peter 3:15-16)

Successful students of Scripture do not distort its meaning. Their honest work brings them the honor of walking down a path worn by many other diligent believers in history. Godly Bible students are not searching for truths that are new. Rather, they work hard to discover the same ancient truths for themselves. Their reward is having fellowship with the Holy Spirit and knowing how God's Word applies to their daily lives.

c. The enemy of worldly cares and distractions

If believers allow themselves to be distracted by worldly worries, they lose the ability to study the Bible effectively. In Matthew 13:3-23, Jesus tells a story that reveals how people respond to His Words. In verse 22, He compared a believer who worried about his life to soil that was full of thorns (weeds).

The one who received the seed that fell among the thorns is the man who hears the word, but the worries of this life and the deceitfulness of wealth choke it, making it unfruitful. (Matthew 13:22)

Life on earth is difficult. Even believers are tempted to allow "the worries of this life" to make them unfruitful. These worries produce the "thorns" of which Jesus spoke, that can "choke" the Word of God. However, is worry unavoidable? Is the life of any believer beyond God's control? In Matthew 6:24-34, Jesus explains that God is concerned with everything that happens to a faithful believer. He will always provide for the needs of His children. Believers are commanded to trust Him and refuse to worry. Jesus said:

But seek first his kingdom and his righteousness, and all these things will be given to you as well. (Matthew 6:33)

Believers who lose their devotion to God and His Word become vulnerable to false doctrine. Believers in this condition need to ask God for help. God will always answer sincere prayers for personal revival and growth. 📖 Read James 1:4-5, Luke 11:9-14 and Psalm 40:1-3.

d. Satan and his demons

All believers have a powerful spiritual enemy in this world named Satan. Satan is the master deceiver. He was able to deceive a third of God's holy angels into rebelling against God. These fallen angels are now his helpers and they are called demons. Here are some of the ways that

Satan and his demons attempt to pervert Biblical truth and harm believers.

- Lie about God (Genesis 3:4-5)
- Misuse Scripture (Matthew 4:5-6)
- Persecute believers (Revelation 2:10)
- Tempt believers to sin (1 Corinthians 7:5)
- Accuse believers of sin before God (Revelation 12:10)
- Scheme to outwit believers (2 Corinthians 2:11)
- Masquerade as an angel of light (2 Corinthians 11:14)
- Perform counterfeit miracles (2 Thessalonians 2:9)
- Lead astray the whole world (Revelation 12:9)

Notice that most of Satan's work centers around spiritual deception, not persecution. Although persecution can be frightening and painful, it is only physical and temporary. Deception, however, can produce a spiritual blindness that is very hard to overcome. For the unbeliever, this blindness can lead to eternal separation from God. 📖 Read 2 Corinthians 4:4.

4) Blindly accepting the teaching of others

a. Teachers are needed

Most of what people learn in life is taught to them by others. Important wisdom and skills are passed on to each new generation in this way. In the church, God has given some believers an exceptional ability to know correct doctrine and teach it well. (Ephesians 4:11-12) However, there is no special class of people who must interpret Scripture for believers. (1 John 2:26-27) It is every believer's responsibility to learn how to use the Bible skillfully. (2 Timothy 2:15) Genuine Christian teachers help believers develop their ability to understand Scripture for themselves. They encourage everyone in the church to maintain a personal relationship with God, but never attempt to take His place. They teach believers to depend upon God, not upon human teachers. (Titus 2:1)

b. Every teacher's doctrine must be verified

In Acts 17, the message that Paul preached about Jesus was exciting news to the Jews that met in the synagogue at Berea. Notice, however, that the Bereans did not simply believe this great apostle on his word alone.

Now the Bereans were of more noble character than the Thessalonians, for they received the message with great eagerness and examined the Scriptures every day to see if what Paul said was true. (Acts 17:11)

The Bereans went directly to the Scriptures to verify that what Paul said was correct. Believers are always responsible to test teaching with their own personal Bible study and prayer. It is not a sign of disrespect to test teaching in this way. Believers need to apply this “Berean test” whenever they hear new doctrines, rejecting whatever is false. (1 Thessalonians 5:21) This is a sign of spiritual maturity. Paul speaks about the benefits of spiritual maturity.

Then we will no longer be infants, tossed back and forth by the waves, and blown here and there by every wind of teaching and by the cunning and craftiness of men in their deceitful scheming. (Ephesians 4:14)

The faith and doctrine of a mature believer will not easily be perverted by the clever lies of false teachers.

C. Characteristics of false teachers

Satan accomplishes his deception in the world through false teachers. They exploit people who have not adopted correct doctrine. The doctrines of false teachers are a clever mix of truth and lies designed to:

- Prevent unbelievers from receiving true, Biblical salvation (2 Corinthians 4:4)
- Pervert the doctrine of believers in a way that makes them ineffective for God (Acts 13:9-10, 2 Peter 3:17, 2 John 7-8)

One of the worst lies taught by false teachers is that ordinary people are not qualified to understand Scripture. False teachers often claim to be the only ones who are able to correctly study and interpret the Bible. Some will even say that God speaks to them directly about Scripture's meaning. The interpretations that come from these deceivers always give Scripture strange new meanings. Anyone who believes these false teachers becomes cut off from real Biblical truth.



Denying believers the power and comfort of Scripture is only one of many deceitful characteristics of false teachers. The following table lists more characteristics of a false teacher.

Table 9.1 Characteristics of false teachers	
They pervert the core doctrines of Christianity.	
	<i>... They will secretly introduce destructive <u>heresies</u>, even denying the sovereign Lord ... (2 Peter 2:1)</i>
	Comment: They distort the Biblical understanding of Jesus and the doctrine of salvation.
	📖 See also Jude 4.
False teachers are deceived by Satan and his demons.	
	<i>The Spirit clearly says that in later times some will abandon the faith and follow deceiving spirits and things taught by demons. (1 Timothy 4:1)</i>
	Comment: The lies they teach were conceived by Satan.
	📖 See also 2 Corinthians 11:13-15.
They may exploit the church for money.	
	<i>... who think that godliness is a means to financial gain. (1 Timothy 6:5)</i>
	Comment: They want to use the church to acquire wealth.
	📖 See also 2 Peter 2:14 and Titus 1:10-11.
They may have much sin in their personal life.	
	<i>With eyes full of adultery, they never stop sinning ... (2 Peter 2:14)</i>
	📖 See also Jude 4 and Matthew 7:15-23.

Table 9.1 Characteristics of false teachers	
They pretend to be Christian leaders.	
	<i>For such men are false apostles, deceitful workmen, masquerading as apostles of Christ ... (2 Corinthians 11:13)</i>
	Comment: They pretend that they are people with authority in the church.
	📖 See also Matthew 7:15.
They often despise authority.	
	<i>This is especially true of those who follow the corrupt desire of the sinful nature and despise authority. (2 Peter 2:10)</i>
	Comment: Like Satan, false teachers resent any authority but their own. They do not want limits on their behavior.
	📖 See also Jude 8 and Isaiah 14:12-15.
They make up deceitful stories.	
	<i>... these teachers will exploit you with stories they have made up. (2 Peter 2:3)</i>
	Comment: Some false teachers pretend that God or angels have told them things that contradict Scripture.
	📖 See also Colossians 2:18 and Jeremiah 23:26.
They desire to have many followers.	
	<i>... men will arise and distort the truth in order to draw away disciples after them. (Acts 20:29-30)</i>
	Comment: By gaining large numbers of followers, false teachers gain whatever they want. They may be seeking wealth, immorality or the ability to control others.
	📖 See also Galatians 4:17 and Matthew 20:25-28.
They prey on the morally weak.	
	<i>... by appealing to the lustful desires of sinful human nature, they entice people ... (2 Peter 2:18)</i>
	Comment: Those who reject the Biblical God of righteousness, find the immoral doctrine of some false teachers very appealing.
	📖 See also 2 Peter 2:14, 2 Timothy 4:3-4 and Jude 4.
They hurt the reputation of the church.	
	<i>Many will follow their shameful ways and will bring the way of truth into disrepute. (2 Peter 2:2)</i>
	Comment: Often, those who follow false teachers, claim to be believers causing confusion among unbelievers.

Table 9.1 Characteristics of false teachers

They are divisive.	
	<i>He has an unhealthy interest in controversies and quarrels about words that result in envy, strife, malicious talk, evil suspicions and constant friction between men of corrupt mind. (1 Timothy 6:4-5)</i>
	Comment: They spread controversy in order to divide the church and draw away those who believe their lies.
	📖 See also Jude 19, 1 Timothy 1:3-5 and Mark 3:25.
They pretend to be believers.	
	<i>For certain men whose condemnation was written about long ago have secretly slipped in among you. ... (Jude 4)</i>
	Comment: They pretend to be believers so that they may spread their false doctrine inside the church.
	📖 See also 2 Peter 2:1.

D. Warning signs of false doctrines

1) How to identify doctrinal error

A believer learns the skill of recognizing interpretation error by first adopting correct doctrine through diligent Biblical study. A thorough familiarity with correct doctrine greatly increases one's ability to recognize dangerous imitations. The Holy Spirit will alert the mature, obedient believer to danger and draw them back to the truths of Scripture. Any errors in interpretation and application are exposed by using the discovery method of studying the Bible. With help from the Holy Spirit and careful study of Scripture, believers can identify and avoid doctrinal error.

2) Warning signs

a. Interpretation that alters a core doctrine of Christianity

Whenever an interpretation of Scripture alters a core doctrine of Christianity, errors have been made. These errors can only be exposed and corrected by thorough discovery study.

Example: Perverting the doctrine of salvation

The doctrine of salvation by faith in Jesus alone is a favorite target of some false teachers. Believers are not saved **by** good works but **for** good works. True salvation can only be received by one who believes that Jesus is God and that His work on the cross is complete. The good works

done by believers do not acquire salvation, complete salvation or sustain salvation. 📖 See Ephesians 2:8-10.

This doctrine is perverted when followers are told that they must do certain things in addition to having faith in Jesus to be saved. False teachers often teach that the following things are **required** for salvation.

- Baptism
- Strict obedience to group leaders
- Believing all doctrine taught by the false teacher
- Successfully complete all training
- Evangelize non-group members regularly
- Give money to group leaders

Notice that all of these requirements are based on the Bible's instructions for believers like:

- Baptism (Matthew 28:19)
- Submit to leaders (Hebrews 13:17)
- Study God's Word (2 Timothy 2:15)
- Serve one another (Galatians 5:13)
- Preach the gospel (2 Timothy 4:1-2)
- Support those who minister in the church (1 Tim 5:17-18)

On the surface they are similar, but the actual difference between the two lists is great. Followers of a false teacher must do these things to achieve salvation. They are taught that the consequence for disobedience is eternity in hell.

The Bible clearly teaches that a person is not saved by obeying laws. Believers serve God in grateful and joyful obedience. This kind of love and devotion that God desires from His children does not live in the hearts of those who are motivated by the fear of hell. Whoever repents and believes the gospel becomes a member of God's family and is saved from hell forever. This is a core doctrine of Christianity. 📖 Read Galatians 2:16, 3:1-3, Ephesians 1:7, 2:8-9 and Titus 3:5.

b. Changing Scripture to support doctrine

Mistranslation is changing the original words of Scripture by tampering with the rules of translation to justify a doctrine. When the clear truths of Scripture are too hard to alter through misinterpretation, some deceitful teachers will use mistranslation. Beware when a teacher must use a single, exclusive translation of the Bible to prove strange doctrines.

Example: The Bible clearly states that Jesus is God, a member of the Trinity. One of the clearest Biblical texts to show this is John 1:1.

*In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word **was God**. (John 1:1)*

A false teacher wished to claim that Jesus was only an angel. To prove Jesus was less than God, he changed John 1:1 to read like this:

In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word **was a god**.

In its original language, the words of Scripture contain no mistakes. When translated faithfully into any language, the meaning of Scripture always remains the same. To add, subtract or alter the original words of Scripture through mistranslation causes error.

Anyone who attempts to change the words of Scripture is committing a sin against God. In Revelation, the angel messenger of Jesus explains His terrible judgment upon anyone who dares to change the words of this book.

I warn everyone who hears the words of the prophecy of this book: If anyone adds anything to them, God will add to him the plagues described in this book. And if anyone takes words away from this book of prophecy, God will take away from him his share in the tree of life and in the holy city, which are described in this book. (Revelation 22:18-19)

It is reasonable to assume that God feels this way about all His written words in the Bible. 📖 Read also Deuteronomy 4:2 and Proverbs 30:5-6.

Examples of mistranslations are: *The New World Translation* by the Watch Tower Bible and Tract Society, also known as the Jehovah's Witnesses, and *The Joseph Smith Translation of the Bible* by the Church of the Latter Day Saints, also known as the Mormons.

c. Preferring non-Biblical sources to Scripture

The final authority for every believer must be the Bible. In some languages, many good things have been written by church leaders to help believers know and obey God. However, believers must not consider any resource equal to Scripture.

d. Adding to Scripture

Some false teachers claim to have the ability to receive new messages directly from God, like Biblical prophets or apostles. These messages are put into books and considered equal to Scripture by their followers. Their words may sound similar to the Bible, but they are actually a very dangerous imitation. **Examples** of this are: the *Book of Mormon* by Joseph Smith and *Science and Health with Key to the Scriptures* by Mary Baker Eddy.

Adding the uninspired words of men to the Bible always results in spiritual confusion and doctrinal error. It violates the first principle of interpretation taught in Lesson 5: "Scripture is the final authority." Anyone who believes that the messages of a false teacher are as good as Scripture is actually beginning a journey into spiritual blindness.

e. Building a teaching on one Bible verse

In Lesson 5 you learned principles of interpretation. The second principle of interpretation is: "Let Scripture interpret Scripture." Bible texts should be understood in light of other Bible verses. The Bible never contradicts itself. Important core doctrines are repeated many times. An example of building a teaching on one Bible verse is shown through the following example of a false interpretation of Ecclesiastes 9:5.

For the living know that they will die, but the dead know nothing; they have no further reward, and even the memory of them is forgotten. (Ecclesiastes 9:5)

There are those who try to build a false doctrine from this one verse. They say this text means there is no life after death. This is a grave error in teaching for the following reasons:

- The type of Biblical writing
Ecclesiastes is wisdom literature and uses much figurative language. A type of figurative language used often in this book is exaggeration. An important repeated phrase in this book is

"Meaningless! Meaningless!" ... "Utterly meaningless! Everything is meaningless." (Ecclesiastes. 1:2)

This verse uses the figurative language of exaggeration.

- **Book purpose and context**
Solomon was a man who had been given great wisdom, wealth and fame by God but did not obey Him. 📖 Read 1 Kings 11. His distance from God made him discouraged and unable to enjoy all he had been given. Solomon wrote primarily about things as they looked from his own earthly, human perspective. In this limited view, it does appear that the dead know nothing and have no further reward. Those who die are usually forgotten among those who are living. Because of the context of this book, Ecclesiastes is not the best source for information about eternity.
- **Whole Bible context**
The Bible is a progressive revelation from God. The New Testament contains more information about what occurs after physical death than was known to Solomon. When the rest of the Bible is considered, it is clear that every person will have an eternal existence in either heaven or hell. This is a core doctrine of Christianity. Jesus said:

He is not the God of the dead, but of the living, for to him all are alive. (Luke 20:38)

📖 See also the following verses: Daniel 12:2, Luke 16:23, Acts 23:6, 1 Corinthians 9:25, 2 Corinthians 5:6-7, Philippians 1:21-23, 1 Thessalonians 4:16-18, 2 Timothy 1:9-10, Hebrews 9:27, 11:16-35 and Revelation 20:13-15.

f. Finding hidden meaning in a text

Approaching a text as if there is hidden meaning can strip away the plain truths of the Bible. Teachers who use this method feel free to associate meaning to the texts that were never intended by the author.

Beware when teachers associate hidden meanings to texts when trying to prove a point. This approach to Scripture denies the Bible's authority and gives it to whoever makes the interpretation. Truth must be allowed to come from Scripture, not to be placed there by the teacher. Placing a predetermined meaning into a text always results in confusion and error.

Example: Joshua 6 gives a historical account of how God helped the Israelites to take the city of Jericho. However, this text has been used to teach a doctrine that said: If believers were silent witnesses for the first

six days of the week, the walls of unbelief would fall when the preacher spoke on Sunday.

There are many good applications that can be made from a proper interpretation of Joshua 6, but this is not one of them. Looking for hidden meaning in a text can lead to such errors.

g. Taking the supernatural out of Scripture

Another type of error interprets supernatural events in the Bible in such a way that they are no longer miracles. This method of interpretation uses current culture and science to judge the Scripture. It seeks to deny the existence of miracles and make human reasoning the final authority.

Example: This perspective has led some teachers to claim that the crossing of the Red Sea found in Exodus 13:18-15:22 was not a miracle. They claim that Israel actually crossed a dried swamp at a different location.

Unless the context is clearly figurative, denying Biblical miracles serves only to weaken its truths. Correct interpretation uses reason and considers natural laws. However, believers understand that Scripture is the message of a supernatural God who is not limited by His own creation. The Bible does not lie about miracles.

3) What is the test?

At the beginning of this lesson, the question was asked: What was the test that they used? Scripture is the test. Like the Bereans in Acts 17:11, wise and prayerful study of Scripture

**Test everything.
Hold on to the good.
(1 Thessalonians 5:21)**

is the only way to test a truth or expose a lie. The following checklist is given to help students test whatever teaching they may encounter.

Table 9.2 Checklist for questionable teaching	
Consider: The principle that the Bible is the final authority	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Does the teaching indicate that a thorough observation of the text was conducted? Was the teaching based on the Scriptures, or on sources other than the Bible such as experiences, human reasoning or other "holy books"?
Consider: Principles of context	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Does the interpretation take into account the various contexts in which it is surrounded? This includes: book context, historical context, type of Biblical writing, figurative language used and the smaller context of sentences and paragraphs.
Consider: Principles of comparing with other Scriptures	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Can the interpretation be verified through other verses found in the New Testament? Were <u>cross references</u> used correctly and in context? Would the interpretation remain unaffected if another recognized translation of the Bible were used?
Consider: Principles of word definitions and text meaning	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Were unusual definitions given to the words of Scripture to justify the interpretation? Was a "hidden meaning" given to the text that the average believer would not have been able to discover through discovery study?
Consider: Principles of consulting	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Does the interpretation or teaching contradict the core doctrines of Christianity? Is this interpretation different from that of most teachers in the church? Does the teacher claim to have a unique ability to understand and teach the Bible? Does the teacher discourage those who question the teaching or wish to search the Scriptures for themselves?
CONCLUSION	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Based on the answers to the previous questions, is the teaching correct? If you find the teaching in error, does it affect a foundational truth of Christianity or is it merely a non-essential belief? Is there any action to be taken?



Lesson 9 Activity Assignments

Class Activity

1. What is the difference between essential and non-essential doctrines? How far should tolerance for non-essential doctrinal differences go? Use Romans 14:1-3, 19-21, Galatians 2:11-14 and Colossians 2:16-17 as key Scriptures in your discussion.
2. Imagine that a guest speaker has come to your church. In his message, he says that believing in Biblical miracles is not necessary. He reads Exodus 14:21-22, but says that believing in a God of salvation does not depend on believing that He parted the Red Sea. Would denying miracles be harmful to God's message in Scripture? Use Colossians 2:8 in your discussion.

Student Activity

1. Jesus says: *Whoever believes and is baptized will be saved ... (Mark 16:16)* Consider whether baptism is required for salvation based on Mark 16:16. Use the interpretation checklist (Table 9.2) to help you discover the truth. Read the following Scriptures as you research this question: Acts 10:44-48, Luke 23:39-43, John 1:12 and Ephesians 2:8-10. Write your findings.
2. Consider the statement: There is no special class of believer that is supposed to interpret the Bible for everyone else. Use the book of 2 Timothy to find verses that apply to this statement. Write your findings.

Further Study Activity

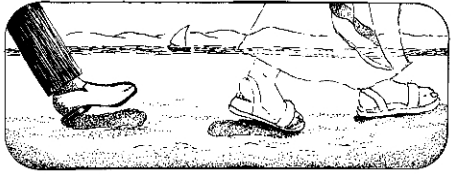
1. A friend who is a believer in your church has believed an interpretation of Scripture that denies a core doctrine of Christianity. How do you respond? Or do you just say nothing? Consider these Scriptures: 2 Timothy 4:1-5, Galatians 6:1 and 1 John 4:1-6. Write your findings.

Lesson
10

APPLICATION: Defined

Objectives

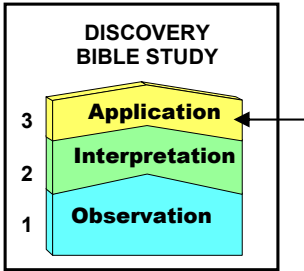
- Learn what it means to apply Bible truths
- Learn the importance of application
- Learn the principles of application
- Learn to avoid application errors
- Understand God's provisions in applying Bible truths
- Commit to make application a habit of life



 **Key Verse**

*Whoever claims to live in Him must walk as Jesus did.
(1 John 2:6)*

Application is the final phase of discovery Bible study. Application answers the question: What does this Scripture mean to me? Knowledge of Biblical truth becomes obedience when it is prayerfully applied through faith. Application is the daily process of being transformed into the image of Jesus.



The observation and interpretation skills taught in the previous lessons provide a solid foundation for correct application.

Overview of application

A. What is application?

While the steps of observation and interpretation are primarily exercises of the mind, application is ultimately a work of the heart.

Apply your heart to instruction and your ears to words of knowledge. (Proverbs 23:12)

Applying Scripture is how believers become more like Jesus in character and in works. These final lessons explain how to apply one's heart to the Bible's instruction and allow God to perform the miracle of transformation in a believer. The steps of application are explained in Lessons 10-13.

1) Application is salvation in the present

Salvation that comes from Jesus is much more than a single spiritual experience. It is a process at work in the life of believers every day. The theological term for this process is "sanctification." When the Bible speaks of salvation, it includes all three elements of time: the past, the present, and the future. Table 10.1 on the following page gives a quick overview of these truths.

2) Application begins with making Jesus Lord

Jesus is more than just the way into heaven. He came to provide a way into fellowship with God. This kind of relationship only works when believers give Him the place of Lord, or master, in their lives.

Who is the master of your life? Is it you, your friends, your culture or Jesus? Just saying Jesus is Lord is not enough. Action that backs up that claim is required. In Matthew 7:15-23, Jesus warns His listeners about the importance of **doing** the Word of God. Part of that Scripture says:

Thus, by their fruit you will recognize them. Not everyone who says to me, 'Lord, Lord,' will enter the kingdom of heaven, but

only he **who does** the will of my Father who is in heaven.
 (Matthew 7:20-21)


Table 10.1 Saved – three points in time		
Points in time	God's provision	Your response
Past (Justification)	I HAVE BEEN SAVED through Jesus from the consequences of sin which are death and separation from God.	I believe the Bible truths about Jesus' death for sin, burial and resurrection. I confess that He is my Lord and Savior.
	📖 See Romans 10:9-10, Acts 16:31, Romans 6:23 and Ephesians 2:5-8.	
Present (Sanctification) APPLICATION HAPPENS HERE	I AM BEING SAVED from the bondage of a sinful nature by the power of the Holy Spirit to have victory over sin.	I acknowledge that I have died to sin and I will let Christ live His life through me so that I become more like Him. Therefore, holiness takes place.
	📖 See Romans 6:11-18, 8:2-14, Galatians 2:20 and Hebrews 7:25.	
Future (Glorification)	I WILL BE SAVED from the presence of sin by being taken to heaven at death or when Jesus takes the believers to heaven.	I am looking forward to the glorious appearing of the Lord Jesus.
	📖 See 1 Thessalonians 4:15-18, Romans 8:22-25, Revelation 21:3-4, 27, 22:12-15, 1 Peter 1:3-6 and 1 Corinthians 15:50-58.	

What we say we believe must be shown in the way we live. A believer's doctrine is genuine only if it results in a lifestyle that exhibits it. Bible knowledge alone does not guarantee obedience. To prove this point, James explained that although the demons have knowledge of God, that knowledge does them no good because they will not obey Him.

But someone will say, "You have faith; I have deeds." Show me your faith without deeds, and I will show you my faith by what I do. You believe that there is one God. Good! Even the demons believe that – and shudder. (James 2:18-20)

The following table gives several reasons why application is important.

Table 10.2 Reasons to apply God's Word	
Why apply	Scripture & Reference
Disobedience leads to self-deception.	
	<i>Do not merely listen to the word, and so deceive yourselves. Do what it says. (James 1:22)</i>
	📖 See also Proverbs 14:8, Galatians 6:3-4 and James 1:26.
Disobedience is sin.	
	<i>Anyone, then, who knows the good he ought to do and doesn't do it, sins. (James 4:17)</i>
Knowledge without love leads to pride.	
	<i>... We know that we all possess knowledge. Knowledge puffs up, but love builds up. (1 Corinthians 8:1)</i>
	📖 See also 1 Corinthians 13:2-8.
True knowledge leads to godliness.	
	<i>Paul, a servant of God and an apostle of Jesus Christ for the faith of God's elect and the knowledge of the truth that leads to godliness. (Titus 1:1)</i>
Obedience brings blessing.	
	<i>He [Jesus] replied, "Blessed rather are those who hear the word of God and obey it." (Luke 11:28)</i>
	📖 See also John 13:17 and James 1:23-25.
Obedience expresses our love for God.	
	<i>If you love me, you will obey what I command. (John 14:15)</i>
	📖 See also 1 John 5:3.

Table 10.2 Reasons to apply God's Word	
Why apply	Scripture & Reference
Obedience proves that we know God.	
	<i>We know that we have come to know him if we obey his commands. The man who says, "I know him," but does not do what he commands is a liar, and the truth is not in him. But if anyone obeys his word, God's love is truly made complete in him. This is how we know we are in him: Whoever claims to live in him must walk as Jesus did. (1 John 2:3-6)</i>
	 See also John 15:7-11 and Titus 1:16.


3) Application is accomplished only with God's help

When a believer discovers what Scripture should be applied in their life, it is natural to respond with loving obedience. However, one must always remember that is impossible to truly obey Bible truths in one's own strength. In the book of Romans, Paul explains that true righteousness comes as a result of faith in God's ability to make a believer righteous.

For in the gospel a righteousness from God is revealed, a righteousness that is by faith from first to last, just as it is written: "The righteous will live by faith." (Romans 1:17)

Through faith in Jesus, one receives this "righteousness from God." By faith, people receive the Lord's righteousness which gives them "the right to become children of God" forever. (John 1:12) However, to live a life that is consistent with their new identity, each believer must be continually empowered and led by the Spirit of God. Paul explains more about this in the following Scripture.

Therefore, brothers, we have an obligation – but it is not to the sinful nature, to live according to it. For if you live according to the sinful nature, you will die; but if by the Spirit you put to death the misdeeds of the body, you will live, because those who are led by the Spirit of God are sons of God. (Romans 8:12-14)

 Read Romans 6-8 for more details on this topic.



B. Steps of application

Steps of application	
Step 1	Identify the appropriate applications
Step 2	Connect your life to Bible truths
Step 3	Decide to take action (repentance)
Step 4	Watch for the transformation

Believers are in a lifetime process of spiritual growth. These steps of application are to help believers grow to be like Jesus.

When first born, believers become a new creation with a new heart. (2 Corinthians 5:17) This does not mean that they act perfectly, never again to be tempted or sin again. However, God desires all believers to be conformed to the nature of their new heart leaving their old, sinful natures behind. It is a gradual process to make believers into the image of Jesus. (Romans 8:29) Only the power of God can make this happen, and every believer can be sure that He will do it. Read Philippians 1:6, 2:12-13 and 1 Thessalonians 5:23-24.

Imagine that the believer's life is a large house with many rooms. Jesus does not desire to be Lord of only some of the rooms, but He desires to be Lord of all. Certain rooms may need more work than others and may be painful to fix. However, if a believer maintains close fellowship with their loving God throughout this process, it will be a joyful experience. This transformation may occur quickly or slowly over the years. God works with each believer uniquely. Read Colossians 3:8-10 and 1 Corinthians 15:49.



C. Skills of application


Believers become mature in their faith through skillfully applying the Word of God. See Hebrews 5:14. These lessons are written to help the student acquire the skills needed to use the tools of application as a habit of life. Table 10.3 shows the skills and tools of application along with the lesson in which they are taught.

Table 10.3 Application skills and associated tools		
Skill	Associated tool	Lesson
Applying the Scriptures	Discovery Worksheet	10, 11, 12, 13
Meditation	Journaling	12
Memorization	Memorization Helps	12



D. Principles of application

The following is a list of principles, or guidelines, to use in applying Bible truths.

1. **God expects faith and obedience** in response to the direct commands and general principles of Scripture.
2. **Application is based on thorough observation and accurate interpretation of Scripture.**
3. **While a text has only one interpretation, it may have many applications.**
4. **The Bible limits application of some Scriptures** for the following reasons.
 - There are limitations based on the intended audience. The text may be addressed to a specific group of people at a specific time.
 - The audience is limited by a covenant to a specific people.  See Hebrews 8-10:18.
 - Subsequent revelation may limit the application. Example: Eating certain kinds of meat was forbidden in the Old Testament Law. (Leviticus 11) However, Acts 10:15 teaches that it is now permissible to eat foods which were formerly unclean.
 - The cultural context may limit the application. The text may not be meant for application in all time periods
5. **A specific command takes priority over a general principle.**
Example: Consider a person who commits adultery and tries to justify that action by saying: "God says that I must love others."
This person has deceitfully misapplied Scripture. The direct command "*you shall not commit adultery*" (Exodus 20:14, Matthew 5:27-30) cannot be undermined by the general principle of love. (1 Corinthians 13)

6. **Keep in mind the whole Bible.** Your application must be consistent with the rest of Scripture.

E. Common application errors

1) Failure to apply the absolute truths of Scripture

As mentioned before, the Bible is a living book from a living God with many practical instructions. When Bible truths are not applied, God's blessings are not realized by the believer or those around them. Consider the following example of failure to apply Scripture.

Example: The Bible is clear that the act of lying to another person is sin. Consider the following text

Do not lie to each other, since you have taken off your old self with its practices. (Colossians 3:9)

📖 See Exodus 20:16, John 8:44; Psalms 19:9, 63:11, 120:2; Proverbs 19:5, Acts 5 and Revelation 21:8.

What does it mean to lie? It means to make an untrue statement with the intent to deceive or to create a misleading impression. It can also mean failure to keep a promise when it was within your power to do it. Most people understand what it means to lie. However, knowing what it means and doing it are two different issues.

Sometimes, people lie for what they think are "good" reasons. Some of those reasons could be:

- They do not want to hurt someone's feelings.
- They do not want to have to pay the price of telling the truth.
- To tell the truth may cost them more money.
- They do not want to lose face or be embarrassed.
- They lie because they are afraid to tell the truth.

Are any of these reasons more important than obeying the Bible's clear teaching regardless of the consequences? This is one of the basic principles of application. Do it. It takes faith to believe God will make all things work out for the good of the obedient believer.

Note: Always speak the truth in love as commanded in Ephesians 4:15. Truth can be used as a harmful weapon if not delivered in love

2) Legalism

Legalism is making rigid laws or rules from the Bible that are not there. Some believers do not trust themselves or others to live under grace. Consequently, they create their own laws or requirements for conduct. They will often try to impose those laws upon other believers. Consider the following example.

Example: A local pastor taught that people must wear their finest clothes to church meetings. He said this was the correct way to show respect for God. He based this on an Old Testament Scripture about special priestly garments found in Exodus 28:4-5. Is this a correct application?

It sounds reasonable to say that fine clothing shows respect for God. In many cultures, this is the correct way to greet dignitaries. However, this is not a requirement taught by the New Testament Scriptures. The Old Testament Law was given to Israel as a contract. Some of the moral elements of the Law are repeated in the New Testament as a guide to believers. However, none of the ceremonial requirements were repeated, except to show how Jesus had fulfilled them once and for all. (Hebrews 10) The ceremonial requirements were never to apply again. Among the requirements of the law that were fulfilled was the role of priest and priestly garments. Jesus became our eternal High Priest. (Revelation 1:5-6) Because of this fact, we do not need special clothes to set us apart from others.

Looking at cross references in the New Testament provides a better understanding about this subject. James explains some of the dangers of paying too much attention to clothing among believers:

Suppose a man comes into your meeting wearing a gold ring and fine clothes, and a poor man in shabby clothes also comes in. If you show special attention to the man wearing fine clothes and say, "Here's a good seat for you," but say to the poor man, "You stand there" or "Sit on the floor by my feet," have you not discriminated among yourselves and become judges with evil thoughts? (James 2:2-4)

There is nothing wrong with wearing nice clothes to church gatherings if it is done in the right spirit. However, making it a requirement is legalism. It

is a misapplication of Scripture. 📖 Read Mark 12:38-40, Romans 13:13-14 and Colossians 3:12-13.

Paul wrote to the believers in Galatia to beware of legalism. We are not made right with God through the Law. We are made righteous through our faith in God through Jesus alone. 📖 Read the whole book of Galatians to see Paul's thoughts on this important issue.

3) Making all historical narratives into models for conduct

The Old Testament stories (narratives) were written to show God's history of redemption. The main character of the Bible is God. Sometimes characters in the stories do things that are not wise or morally correct. Narratives record actual events and may not make conclusions about the behavior of those mentioned. It would be foolish to use texts like this as a guide for personal conduct. Not every Old Testament story is intended to be a guide of conduct for everyone at all times. Consider the following observations about Biblical narratives.

- **Example 1:** God told the prophet Hosea to marry a prostitute. (Hosea 1:2) Of course, this is not a good example of how to choose a spouse. (Leviticus 21:10-15, John 8:1-11, Hebrews 13:4) The Hosea text gives a historic account of a specific command to a specific person at a very specific time in the history of Israel.
- **Example 2:** Read the story of Gideon in Judges 6-7. God gave Gideon instructions and was told that God would be with him. However, Gideon was afraid and doubted. He asked for a sign to prove God's message. (Judges 6:17, 36, 39) God graciously gave him two signs. Is this story a model for believers who want God's direction? No. This narrative was not intended to encourage people to disbelieve God's message and ask for signs. 📖 Read the words of Jesus in Matthew 12:39.
- **Example 3:** The historical narrative of the first church tells that it met in houses. (Acts 5:42) Was the Holy Spirit indicating that all believers at all times must meet only in houses? To answer this question, read the words of Jesus in John 4:19-24.

The stories found in the Old Testament are valuable and believers can learn much from them. They can provide excellent examples to the clear teachings of conduct found in the New Testament.

4) Making Old Testament Laws into rules for today

The Old Testament Law was given to a specific people, Israel, for a specific purpose. This Law is found in Exodus, Leviticus, Deuteronomy and Numbers. It told Israel how to live in relationship with God and with each other at that time. There were about 600 specific commandments that God expected the Israelites to keep. The question for Christians reading this part of Scripture becomes: How do these specific laws apply to me today? Consider the following guidelines:

- The Old Testament Law is a binding contract (covenant) between God and His people Israel. The parties involved in this agreement are identified in Exodus 20:2 as the Lord God and the people He brought out of Egypt.

"I am the LORD your God, who brought you out of Egypt, out of the land of slavery," (Exodus 20:2)

- The Old Testament covenant is different than the New Testament covenant given by Jesus because it has different terms and conditions. Consider the following Scripture.

In the same way, after supper he took the cup, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood; do this, whenever you drink it, in remembrance of me." For whenever you eat this bread and drink this cup, you proclaim the Lord's death until he comes. (1 Corinthians 11:25-26)

📖 See also Luke 22:20, Hebrews 8:6-13, 9:1-28 and 10: 16-18.

- Part of the old covenant is renewed or restated in the new covenant. Only this restated part of the Old Testament Law can be considered directly applicable to the lives of believers. However, obedience to these laws is not a means to acquire salvation. The blood of Jesus is the believer's assurance of salvation, not their own works or sacrifices. 📖 Read Romans 5:9, Ephesians 1:7 and Hebrews 9:14.
- All Old Testament Scripture is beneficial to believers when understood through the discovery method of Bible study. 📖 Read 2 Timothy 3:16 and Matthew 5:17-20.



Lesson 10 Activity Assignments

Class Activity

1. Read 2 Timothy 3:1-9 together in class.
 - Make a list of ungodly (bad) behaviors.
 - Consider how your life compares with these behaviors. Do you find anything in the list that applies to your current lifestyle? What needs to change?
 - Pray together as a class for God's changing and transforming power.
2. Review Diagram 10.1, the Discovery Worksheet, provided on the following page. Discuss the answers supplied in column 4.
3. Discussion points/questions:
 - What is application?
 - How does observation and interpretation tie into application?
 - Why is it important to apply God's Word to your life?
 - What are the cautions relating to application?
 - What if the pastor described in this lesson in section "E" had said that everyone should wear old, plain clothes in church meetings? What would be your response? Why?

Student Activity

1. Get the Discovery Worksheets begun in Lesson 5 activities. Complete the worksheet by filling out column 4 using 2 Timothy 2:14-26 as your text.

Further Study Activity

1. Get the Discovery Worksheets used in Lesson 5. Complete column 4 using 2 Timothy 3:1-9 as your text.

Diagram 10.1 Discovery Worksheet example

Discovery Worksheet

Bible text: 2 Timothy 1:12-14

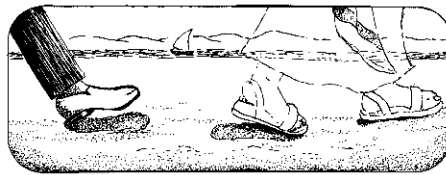
Page 1

Observation		Interpretation	Application
What does it say?		What does it mean?	What does it mean to me?
Details	Questions	Meaning/ Understanding	My response
Paul is not ashamed because he knows Jesus. (1:12)	What could cause Paul to be ashamed?	The context suggests that he is suffering in prison because of preaching the gospel. (vs 1: 8)	
Paul is convinced that Jesus is able to guard what is entrusted to him. (1:12)	What does guard mean?	The Greek word, <i>phulasso</i> , means "to watch, be on guard, to preserve, obey, avoid." It is also translated as "keep."	I need to believe that God will guard what I entrust to Him. Praise you, Jesus, for your faithfulness to me!
Paul tells Timothy to use the teaching he heard from Paul as his pattern of teaching. (1:13)	What does pattern mean?	One commentary says it is a model or standard for teaching.	It would be helpful to observe how and what Paul taught and use it as a pattern for my teaching to the church.
Sound teaching should include faith and love in Jesus. (1:13)			I need to add love to my teaching. I also need to believe God to do His work in people. I need to love the people that I teach.
Guard the good deposit that was entrusted to you with the help of the Holy Spirit. (1:14)	What is the good deposit? ----- Is this word "guard" the same as the one used in verse 12?	From the context, the good deposit is the pattern of sound teaching or the gospel. Yes, it is the same word as in verse 12.	I need to guard God's Word in such a way that it is not distorted or damaged through misinterpretation by me or others. I need to be careful how I handle the Word of God.

APPLICATION: Identify Who, Why, What, When, Where

Objectives

- Learn Step 1 of application
- Learn how to identify the appropriate application
- Practice identifying application(s)



Key Verse

Do not conform any longer to the pattern of this world, but be transformed by the renewing of your mind. Then you will be able to test and approve what God's will is – his good, pleasing and perfect will. (Romans 12:2)

The key verse talks about being transformed by the renewing of your mind. Transformation means being like Jesus in both loving God and loving others. The goal of application is finding God's perfect will and doing it. How is this done? It is done through submitting to the Scriptures and the guidance of the Holy Spirit.. This lesson provides tools that help identify the appropriate application for you and those to whom you minister.



Step 1: Identify the application

Steps of application	
Step 1	Identify the appropriate applications ←
Step 2	Connect your life to Bible truths
Step 3	Decide to take action (repentance)
Step 4	Watch for the transformation

This first step in application assumes that:

- Observation of the text has been completed.
- The Bible text has been correctly interpreted.
- The student is praying for God's guidance for successful application.

A. Care is needed to determine an application

There are many examples in history where people have misapplied the Bible in ways that have hurt themselves and others. The Bible is said to be the sword of the Spirit. (📖 See Ephesians 6:17.) A sword can be a dangerous tool in unskilled hands. It is important that believers pay attention to good guidelines for application and the Holy Spirit's guidance. The following is an example of the consequences of misapplying Scripture.

Example: Misapplication of Scripture

A new believer reads Luke 14:26 in which Jesus said:

"If anyone comes to me and does not hate his father and mother, his wife and children, his brothers and sisters – yes, even his own life – he cannot be my disciple." (Luke 14:26-27)

The believer took the verses literally and began to neglect his family members. Another believer, who studies the Bible using the discovery method of Bible study, noticed the new believer's behavior. He explained how figurative language should be identified and interpreted. He also told him to read other verses like 1 Timothy 5:8, 3:4 and 3:12. In 1 Timothy 5:3, Paul said:

If anyone does not provide for his relatives, and especially for his immediate family, he has denied the faith and is worse than an unbeliever. (1 Timothy 5:8)

The mature believer explained that Jesus wanted His disciple to put Him first. He was not telling His disciples to neglect their family. He would not ask believers to deny the great command of loving God and also loving others that He spoke in Matthew 22:37-39.

This example shows the importance of being in fellowship with other believers. If a believer misinterprets or misapplies Scripture, other believers can show a better way. Belonging to a local church and having close relationships with other believers is needed for a balanced Christian journey.

B. Questions to ask when applying Scripture

In earlier lessons, students learned to question the Bible text in order to complete successful observation. Asking questions that begin with **who**, **why**, **what**, **where**, **when** and **how** are all important when making decisions about application. Table 11.1 lists these questions and explains how to use them when applying Scripture.

Many New Testament Scriptures are applicable to all believers in all generations. One example is the following verse.

Love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind and with all your strength. (Mark 12:30)

Other Scripture texts, however, will have limited application. All verses in the Bible have value and are profitable. When Paul wrote 1 Timothy, only the Old Testament Scriptures existed. Paul says of those Scriptures:

All Scripture is God-breathed and is useful for teaching, rebuking, correcting and training in righteousness, (2 Timothy 3:16)

Although there may not be a direct command to obey, there are many other ways to apply Scripture. Instead of a direct command, there may be an example to follow or a truth to believe. The various ways to make an application will be discussed in Lessons 12 and 13.

Table 11.1 Asking questions of the Scriptures	
Question	Identify the appropriate application
Who?	Who was the intended audience at the time it was written or said?
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is the text addressed to a limited audience?
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is the text addressed to all believers in all generations, in all circumstances?
Why?	Why is it a limited audience?
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Was the audience a specific group of people at a specific time?
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Was the audience limited by a specific covenant for a specific people group?
What?	What is the direct command or the general <u>principle</u> ?
Where?	Where in the rest of Scripture is this command or principle repeated?
When?	When should this text be applied?

1) Who was the intended audience at the time it was written or said?

Since all Bible verses are not applied to all people at all times, we need to determine if the Bible text we are reading applies to us. The first question to ask is: To whom was it **originally** said or written? Who was the intended audience? Note: Some of this work has already been completed in the observation phase of discovery Bible study. Answer the following questions.

- Is the text addressed to a limited audience?
- Is the text addressed to all believers in all circumstances?

2) Why is it a limited audience?

The intended audience may limit the application of the text for several reasons. The command may be limited to whom it is addressed. Limitation of application can result if the Bible text was written to:

- A specific group of people
- A specific person
- People included in a covenant
- People in a certain circumstance
- A group of people in a specific era or time

Even when the audience is limited, there may be ways to apply the text. If you find that the audience was limited, still seek the Lord and ask for ways the text may benefit you or others. Keep in mind as you work through the application questions that if there is not a direct command to you, there may be a general principle. Do not stop seeking an application because it appears on the surface that there is not one.

a. Was the audience to a specific group of people at a specific time?

- **To a specific group**

Most of the letters in the New Testament say to whom they are written. Read the following three examples from letters written to Christians in the New Testament.

To all in Rome who are loved by God and called to be saints: (Romans 1:7)

To the church of God in Corinth, to those sanctified in Christ Jesus and called to be holy, together with all those everywhere who call on the name of our Lord Jesus Christ-their Lord and ours. (1 Corinthians 1:2)

Simon Peter, a servant and apostle of Jesus Christ, to those who through the righteousness of our God and Savior Jesus Christ have received a faith as precious as ours: (2 Peter 1:1)

In most of the New Testament letters, the audience is believers except if the immediate text limits the application to a specific person or group within the universal church.

- **To a specific person**

Paul asked Timothy to bring his cloak, scrolls and parchments to him.

When you come, bring the cloak that I left with Carpus at Troas, and my scrolls, especially the parchments. (2 Timothy 4:13)

Obviously, this is not a command to all believers in all generations to bring Paul what he needs. The application is limited by the context.

- **To people in certain circumstances or conditions**

The following are examples of Scripture that speak to individuals in certain circumstances.

- Scriptures regarding the qualifications of an elder in the local church. 📖 Read 1 Timothy 3:1-7 and Titus 1:6.
- Scriptures regarding instructions to younger widows. 📖 See 1 Timothy 5:9-10 and 14-15.
- Scriptures regarding those that are married or would like to be married. 📖 Read 1 Corinthians 7:1-16.
- Scriptures directed toward a group of people at a specific time or era. In Matthew 24, Jesus answers a question asked by His disciples regarding the end of the age and signs of His coming. This text is specific to that context and time period.

As Jesus was sitting on the Mount of Olives, the disciples came to him privately. "Tell us," they said, "when will this happen, and what will be the sign of your coming and of the end of the age?" (Matthew 24:3)

In all these examples, there still may be some truth for you to apply.

b. Was the audience limited by a specific covenant for a specific people group?

A covenant is an agreement or contract between two or more parties. The covenant contract can be between two people, two countries or between God and people. In the Bible, an important part of making a covenant between parties was the shedding of blood. The Hebrew word for covenant is *berith* which literally means "to cut an agreement." A Biblical example is found in Genesis 15:1-18. This covenant between God and Abraham was made through passing between pieces of cut flesh. When God made a covenant, it contained three important elements:

1. Words and promises.
2. Blood sacrifice – The blood from the sacrifice indicated that the covenant was needed for life and death reasons.
3. A seal or sign of the covenant that acted as a reminder of the agreement.

There are several covenants between God and mankind. The major covenants of the Bible are:

- Covenant between God and Abraham and Abraham's descendants. 📖 See Genesis 15, Romans 3:21-22, 4:18-25, Galatians 3:14-18.

- The Old Covenant between God and Israel. 📖 See Exodus 20-40, Leviticus and Deuteronomy.
- The New Covenant brought to mankind through Jesus' death and resurrection. 📖 See Matthew 26:26-28, Luke 22:20, Hebrews 9, 10, 11 and Galatians 2:11-5:26.

Large books have been written on the topic of covenant. This manual only introduces the subject of Biblical covenants. One of the key points of the New Covenant is that it changes how a believer applies many of the laws in the Old Covenant. This is an important topic to believers and it is worth spending time to study it. The book of Hebrews has much to say about the Old and New Covenants. Pay special attention to Hebrews 8-11. Consider the following verses.

The law is only a shadow of the good things that are coming - not the realities themselves. For this reason it can never, by the same sacrifices repeated endlessly year after year, make perfect those who draw near to worship. (Hebrews 10:1)

First he said, "Sacrifices and offerings, burnt offerings and sin offerings you did not desire, nor were you pleased with them" (although the law required them to be made). Then he said, "Here I am, I have come to do your will." He sets aside the first to establish the second. And by that will, we have been made holy through the sacrifice of the body of Jesus Christ once for all. (Hebrews 10:8-10)

These verses, and others in the New Testament, limit the way believers apply the Old Covenant's civil and ceremonial laws. This includes the laws regarding blood sacrifices. These types of sacrifices ended as a result of Jesus' sacrificial death. (📖 See Leviticus 4:4-5 and Hebrews 10:8-10.) Believers no longer live under the ceremonial and civil law of the Old Covenant. However, these laws do have value in regards to Biblical principles. Many of the moral laws have been repeated and expanded in the New Testament.

In the Christian journey, one may discover believers who want to apply the Laws in the Old Covenant to them. They may try to use the laws about what is eaten, what is worn, how to dress, or how to cut one's hair. This is error. 📖 Read Galatians 2:17-5:6. Paul speaks to the issue of observing the law. Other believers may think that the Old Testament has little meaning today. This also is not accurate.

3) What is a direct command or a general principle?

a. Direct commands

A direct command is an instruction to do, or not do, something and is applicable to all people. An example of a direct command is found in Matthew 22:36-40.

*"Teacher, which is the greatest commandment in the Law?"
Jesus replied: "Love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind.' This is the first and greatest commandment. And the second is like it: 'Love your neighbor as yourself.' All the Law and the Prophets hang on these two commandments." (Matthew 22:36-40)*

Jesus summarizes the Old Covenant Law into two commandments. They are to love God and to love others as yourself. Although this is very simple to say, to apply these two commandments requires a complete change in one's nature. Only a person who is a true believer having God's spirit within can begin to adequately practice these commands. Consider if your choices are influenced by the command to love God and love others.

b. General principle

A general principle is a Biblical standard that may, or may not be, directly expressed. Sometimes the principle expresses a group of commands. For example, the commands regarding adultery (found in Exodus 20:14 and Matthew 5:28) relate to the general principle of God's desire that His people be sexually pure. This principle can be applied to situations that may not be addressed directly in the Bible. This principle of sexual purity applies to the issue of pornography. Pornography is a term used to describe any materials that are sexually explicit and intended to cause sexual arousal. It would be inconsistent with the general principle of sexual purity to indulge in looking at pornography in print, on television, movies (films) or on the computer. As in the time of David, looking at Bathsheba led to a sequence of compromise and sin. Jesus spoke about this same principle in Matthew 5:27-30.

General principles may be determined from historical passages but should not contradict clear direct commands. Be careful not to take a historical passage and make it a rule of conduct. For example: Paul had a policy of not preaching the gospel where it had already been preached.

This is not a principle that all Christians or missionaries should follow. It was specific to Paul. 📖 See Romans 15:20.

Although the Old Testament was written primarily to Israel, there are general principles which can be applied to believers today. An example is found in the Old Covenant Laws regarding giving offerings. 📖 Read Leviticus 2-3. The laws of giving were very specific. As believers, we do not follow these laws. However, the principle of giving the first and the best to God is still valid. This is restated in the New Testament in 2 Corinthians 9:1-15. Several other examples of a general principle are given for you to consider.

- Do not show partiality or favoritism – The audience in Leviticus 19:15 is specific to the Israelites, but the principle of doing justly is applicable today. 📖 See James 2:1.
- Pray for the king – Even though your government may not have a king, the principle of praying for those in authority in the government still applies. 📖 See 1 Timothy 2:1-2.
- Pay taxes to Caesar – We do not specifically pay taxes to Rome; however, the general principle of paying taxes required by governments still applies. 📖 See Matthew 22:2, Mark 12:16-17 and Luke 20:25.

General principles may be derived from historical passages but should not contradict clear direct commands written other places in Scripture. Be careful not to take a historical passage and make it the rule of conduct unless there is a direct command to do so.

4) Where in the rest of Scripture is this command or principle discussed?

The second principle of interpretation discussed in Lesson 5 was “Let Scripture interpret Scripture.” The Bible will not contradict itself. There is complete harmony and agreement within it. However, there may be a time when contradiction seems to occur. A Bible student’s work is to study both parts of Scriptures until the issue is resolved or until the Lord shows you an answer at another time. Do not act on what appears to be a contradiction.

This principle applies to application as well. If you are applying a text in a way that does not agree with another part of Scripture – Stop! Seek the Lord and the counsel of others before applying the text. Believers need to

be sure their understanding of a text is correct before applying that principle to themselves and others. 📖 See Acts 20:27-31.

In Lesson 8 you learned how to use a concordance and how to do cross-referencing. This tool helps Bible students to compare the same topic or word usage from one Scripture to other Scriptures using the same word or topic. A concordance is very helpful to investigate whether an application is consistent with the whole Bible.

For example, a command in the Old Testament may no longer need to be obeyed under the New Covenant. Jesus gave greater insight into applying the Law as He taught His followers. Jesus said that He came not to abolish the Law but to fulfill it. (📖 Read Matthew 5:17-18.) However, Jesus interpreted and applied the Old Testament Laws differently than the religious leaders at the time. Consider the following words of Jesus in which He referred to the Old Covenant stated in Exodus 21:23-25 and Leviticus 24:20.

*"You have heard that it was said, 'Eye for eye, and tooth for tooth.' But I tell you, Do not resist an evil person. If someone strikes you on the right cheek, turn to him the other also. And if someone wants to sue you and take your tunic, let him have your cloak as well. If someone forces you to go one mile, go with him two miles. Give to the one who asks you, and do not turn away from the one who wants to borrow from you.
(Matthew 5:38-42)*

But if there is serious injury, you are to take life for life, eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot, burn for burn, wound for wound, bruise for bruise. (Exodus 21:23-25)

An untaught person reading Exodus 21:23-25 might think that it is commanded to return injury for injury. However, Jesus gave a greater understanding to this Old Testament Law. Through using a concordance or having knowledge of the New Testament, it would be clear that Jesus had a new and better way to respond to enemies by love. 📖 See Matthew 5:43-48.

Before making an application in which you are unsure, do the following actions:

- Pray about it
- Consult with the rest of Scripture

- Seek input from others in the local church or from other trusted Christian resources

These three actions will keep you from making hurtful errors in applying Scripture to yourself or others.

5) When should this text be applied?

Sometimes the text limits itself to a time in history, the place (geographic location) or circumstance. Consider the following words of Jesus as an example of this.

"So when you see standing in the holy place 'the abomination that causes desolation,' spoken of through the prophet Daniel – let the reader understand – then let those who are in Judea flee to the mountains. Let no one on the roof of his house go down to take anything out of the house. Let no one in the field go back to get his cloak." (Matthew 24:15-18)

These words of Jesus are very specific commands for a specific time in Judea when the holy place (the temple) is violated. The command to take nothing out of his house as one flees Judea obviously is not a universal command.

C. An example of identifying applications

The following is an example of how these questions can help identify an appropriate application. Read the following text from Exodus 20:8-11.

"Remember the Sabbath day by keeping it holy. Six days you shall labor and do all your work, but the seventh day is a Sabbath to the LORD your God. On it you shall not do any work, neither you, nor your son or daughter, nor your manservant or maidservant, nor your animals, nor the alien within your gates. For in six days the LORD made the heavens and the earth, the sea, and all that is in them, but he rested on the seventh day. Therefore the LORD blessed the Sabbath day and made it holy. (Exodus 20:8-11)

This is the fourth commandment of the Ten Commandments given to Israel. The moral code found in most of the Ten Commandments is repeated in the New Testament and is a guide for Christian conduct. However, how should a believer apply the fourth commandment? Should

the church be worshipping on Saturday which is the seventh day of the week? Why do most believers worship on Sunday, the first day of the week? Read for yourself the example in Table 11.2 and the cross-references. Make your own decision as to how to apply the fourth commandment through your own study and fellowship with the Lord.

Table 11.2 Asking application questions of the Scripture	
Questions to determine the appropriate application	Answer regarding Exodus 20:8-11
Who was the intended audience at the time it was written or said?	Addressed to a specific group: Israel. 📖 Read Exodus 19:5-6. For context: Exodus 19 and 20
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is the text addressed to a limited audience? 	Yes
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Is the text addressed to all believers in all generations, in all circumstances? 	No
Why is it a limited audience?	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Was the audience a specific group of people at a specific time? 	Yes 📖 See Exodus 20:22-23
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Was the audience limited by a specific covenant for a specific people group? 	Yes. This verse is at the beginning of the old covenant. This covenant was between God and the people of Israel.
What is the direct command or the general principle?	Sabbath means “to cease.” The word includes the idea of completely stopping activity. The principle is to rest from your normal activities. Jesus taught that He is Lord of the Sabbath. The Sabbath (resting) was instituted for mankind’s benefit. Mankind was not made for the Sabbath.
Where in the rest of Scripture is this command or principle discussed?	Matthew 12:1-14, Mark 2:23-28, 3:1-6, Luke 6:1-11, 13:10-16, 14:1-6, John 5:1-16, 7:21-24, Acts 13:42-44, 20:7-12, Colossians 2:16-23, Hebrews 4:1-11, Revelation 1:10.

Table 11.2 Asking application questions of the Scripture	
Questions to determine the appropriate application	Answer regarding Exodus 20:8-11
When should this text be applied?	There should be time in the week set aside to rest from normal activities. It appears that the day is not as important as the idea of resting from normal activities and to take time to fellowship with the Lord.



Lesson 11 Activity Assignments

Class activity

1. Read 2 Timothy 2:14-26. Complete Table 11.3 as a class. Answer all of the questions.
2. Discuss your answers as a class.

Table 11.3 Asking application questions of the Scripture	
Questions to determine the appropriate application	Answers regarding 2 Timothy 2:14-26
Who was the intended audience at the time it was written or said?	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is the text addressed to a limited audience? 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is the text addressed to all believers in all generations, in all circumstances? 	
Why is it a limited audience?	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Was the audience a specific group of people at a specific time? 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Was the audience limited by a specific covenant for a specific people group? 	
What is the direct command or the general principle?	
Where in the rest of Scripture is this command or principle discussed?	
When should this text be applied?	

Student Activity

1. Read 2 Timothy 3:1-8. Complete Table 11.4. Answer all of the questions.

Table 11.4 Asking application questions of the Scripture	
Questions to determine the appropriate application	Answer regarding 2 Timothy 3:1-8
Who was the intended audience at the time it was written or said?	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is the text addressed to a limited audience? 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is the text addressed to all believers in all generations, in all circumstances? 	
Why is it a limited audience?	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Was the audience a specific group of people at a specific time? 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Was the audience limited by a specific covenant for a specific people group? 	
What is the direct command or the general principle?	
Where in the rest of Scripture is this command or principle discussed?	
When should this text be applied?	

Further Study Activity

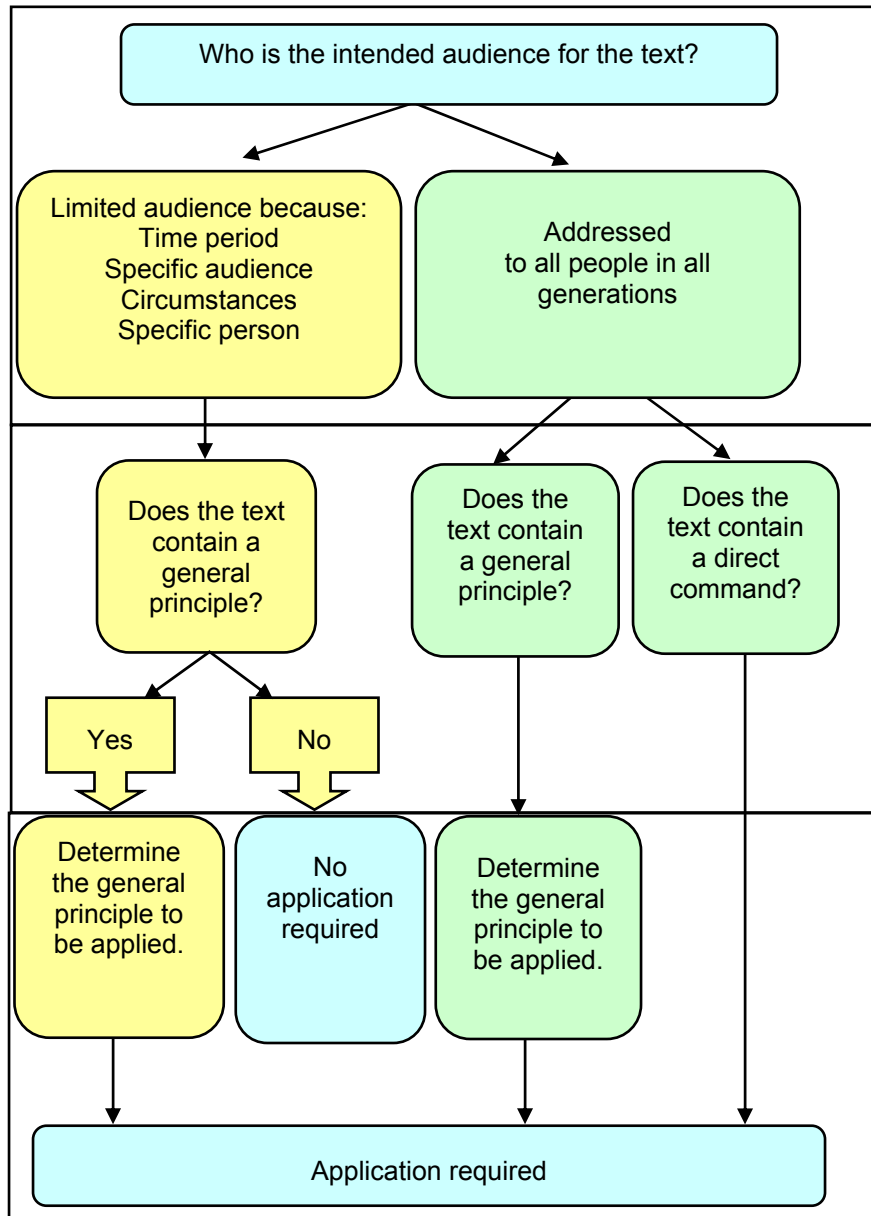
1. Read 2 Timothy 3:10-16. Complete Table 11.5. Answer all of the questions.

Table 11.5 Asking application questions of the Scripture	
Questions to determine the appropriate application	Answer regarding 2 Timothy 3:10-16
Who was the intended audience at the time it was written or said?	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is the text addressed to a limited audience? 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Is the text addressed to all believers in all generations, in all circumstances? 	
Why is it a limited audience?	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Was the audience a specific group of people at a specific time? 	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Was the audience limited by a specific covenant for a specific people group? 	
What is the direct command or the general principle?	
Where in the rest of Scripture is this command or principle discussed?	
When should this text be applied?	

Additional help:

The Application Flow Chart, Figure 11.1, on the following page is another tool to aid in determining an appropriate application of Scripture.

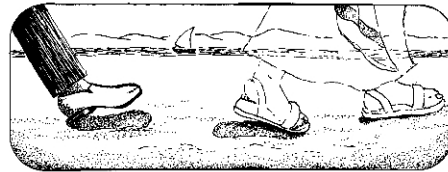
Figure 11.1 Application Flow Chart



APPLICATION: Reflect

Objectives

- Learn Step 2 of application
- Learn the skills of Biblical meditation and memorization
- Learn the benefits of writing in a journal
- Practice Biblical meditation and journaling



Key Verses

Do not let this Book of the Law depart from your mouth; meditate on it day and night, so that you may be careful to do everything written in it. Then you will be prosperous and successful. (Joshua 1:8)

Reflect on what I am saying, for the Lord will give you insight into all this. (2 Timothy 2:7)

In these key verses, God tells believers to meditate and reflect on His Word. Scripture uses the words “meditate” and “reflect” to describe carefully thinking about Bible texts. This kind of deep thinking is a skill of application that will be explained in this lesson.

The wise believer does not rush into all applications of Scripture. Applying some texts will require time for careful consideration. Thinking about

Gods Word is always beneficial. What a person thinks about is as important as what a person does, because thoughts affect actions.



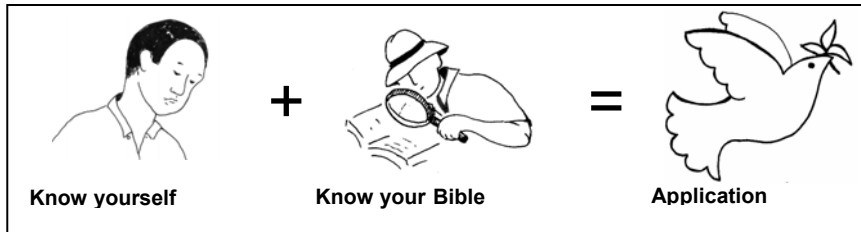
Step 2: Connect your life to Bible truths

Steps of application	
Step 1	Determine the appropriate applications
Step 2	Connect your life to Bible truths ←
Step 3	Decide to take action (repentance)
Step 4	Watch for the transformation

Step 2 is about connecting the dots! It connects what is read in the pages of the Bible with what is happening in your life. Wisely knowing one's self and God's Word is an important part of completing this application step.



Diagram 12.1 Connect your life to Bible truths



Connecting the knowledge you have of yourself and the Bible moves a believer one step closer to Biblical application.

A. Consider your life

Looking at our own life and considering our ways can be uncomfortable. It is common for people to hear a teaching or read a Bible verse and think about how it applies to a spouse, brother, friend or neighbor. Occasionally, it is a good idea to slow down, get alone in a quiet place,

and examine our own life. During these times, it is helpful to ask ourselves these hard questions:

- **What has your life been like in the past?** How were your relationships with the Lord and with others? Were things better in the past or worse? In what ways?
- **What is going on in your life now?** How is your relationship with the Lord, your family and other believers? Are you growing in the Lord or going backwards? What is the general direction of your life?
- **What do you want in the future?** What do you want your loved ones to say at your funeral? What do you want to accomplish before moving into eternity? What do you think that the Lord would say about your life if you died today?

Table 12.1 shows several Scripture texts that encourage believers to examine (consider) their life.

Table 12.1 Consider your life	
Consider your ways because it is wise to do it.	
	<i>The wisdom of the prudent is to give thought to their ways, but the folly of fools is deception. (Proverbs 14:8)</i>
	📖 See also Lamentations 3:40.
Examine your own life first.	
	<i>Brothers, if someone is caught in a sin, you who are spiritual should restore him gently. But watch yourself, or you also may be tempted. (Galatians 6:1)</i>
	📖 See also Matthew 7:3-6 and 2 Corinthians 13:5.
Look at your life and the Bible – do not forget what you see.	
	<i>Anyone who listens to the word but does not do what it says is like a man who looks at his face in a mirror and, after looking at himself, goes away and immediately forgets what he looks like. But the man who looks intently into the perfect law that gives freedom, and continues to do this, not forgetting what he has heard, but doing it – he will be blessed in what he does. (James 1:23-25)</i>
Examine yourself when you take communion (the Lord's Supper).	
	<i>A man ought to examine himself before he eats of the bread and drinks of the cup. (1 Corinthians 11:28)</i>

B. Consider your life in the light of Scripture

When you read the Scriptures, pay attention!

We must pay more careful attention, therefore, to what we have heard, so that we do not drift away. (Hebrews 2:1)

Pray that the Holy Spirit helps you to see the connection between what is in Scripture and how it affects your life. Many things in Scripture can be applied, but it takes help from the Holy Spirit to do it correctly. This is the difference between living by the Law and living by the Spirit. The Law seems to be demanding and unforgiving. The Spirit, however, carefully guides each believer to respond to the Scriptures at the correct time and in the best way.



When considering application of a Scripture, ask the Lord and ask yourself the following questions:

- In light of my **past** history, is there something in this Bible text for me to apply?
- In light of my **current** circumstances, is there something in this text for me to apply?
- In light of my **future** goals and plans, is there something in this text for me to apply?

This type of thinking takes time and quietness. The skill of meditation will help you connect your life with the Word of God.



C. The skill of meditation

1) What is Biblical meditation?

Meditation is continued thought on a subject through turning it over and over in one's mind. It is usually done in quietness without distraction. Biblical meditation is similar, except believers prayerfully think about God and the Scriptures. Believers may do this during their devotional time. Unlike other religious meditation that attempts to empty the mind, Biblical

meditation fills the mind with Scripture and thoughts of God. Biblical meditation creates the best conditions for receiving God's guidance. It also brings transformation, as seen in Romans 12:2 Meditation is an essential skill of application - it is when the Holy Spirit connects a believer's life with Scripture.

Biblical meditation is one way we love God with our mind. The following commandment is applicable to all people:

*"Love the Lord your God with all your heart, and with all your soul and with all your **mind**." (Matthew 22:27)*

Paul tells young Timothy to get more insight, through thinking on what Paul is telling him.

***Reflect** on what I am saying, for the Lord will give you insight into all this. (2 Timothy 2:17)*

The word reflect in Greek comes from the word meaning "to exercise the mind." Casual thinking is not enough to get insights from God. Purposeful thinking about Scripture creates good soil to see the seeds of Christian character grow.

2) Road blocks to Biblical meditation

The following are three hindrances to effective meditation.

- **A closed mind** is a mind that does not want to hear God's voice and obey Him. Usually this is the result of known unconfessed sin. Believers who are knowingly walking in sinful rebellion are not likely to humbly and prayerfully reflect on Scripture. God will tell us the truth about ourselves. 📖 See Romans 8:5-8.
- **A superficial mind** is a mind that sees no need for quietly reflecting on Scripture in order to hear God speak. This may be because the believer does not know about the spiritual discipline of meditation and its benefits, or is too lazy to practice it. 📖 See Proverbs 8:10, Hebrews 6:12 and Colossians 3:16.
- **A preoccupied mind** is a mind that is too busy with the concerns of this life to concentrate on the things of God. The cares of this life crowd out the pursuit of God. 📖 See Matthew 13:1-38.

The one who received the seed that fell among the thorns is the man who hears the word, but the worries of this life and the deceitfulness of wealth choke it, making it unfruitful. (Matthew 13:22)

3) What does the Bible say about meditation?

The discipline of meditation is found throughout the Bible. Genesis 24:63 says that Isaac went out to the field one evening to meditate. In Revelation, Jesus instructs His church to remember what they had heard from Him.

Remember, therefore, what you have received and heard; obey it, and repent. But if you do not wake up, I will come like a thief, and you will not know at what time I will come to you. (Revelation 3:3)

When believers meditate on Scripture and the greatness of God, they open the door to sweet fellowship with the Lord. Joshua 1:8 and Psalm 1:2-3 are important verses about meditation. Consider the following table.

Table 12.2 Biblical meditation		
Question	Joshua 1:8	Psalm 1:2-3
On what should believers meditate?	<i>Do not let this Book of the Law depart from your mouth;</i>	<i>But his delight is in the law of the Lord, and on his law he meditates</i>
When should believers meditate?	<i>Meditate on it day and night</i>	<i>Day and night</i>
Why should believers meditate?	<i>So that you may be careful to do everything written in it</i>	<i>He is like a tree planted by streams of water, which yields its fruit in season and whose leaf does not wither.</i>
What is the result of meditation?	<i>Then you will be prosperous and successful.</i>	<i>Whatever he does prospers.</i>

4) Other verses about meditation and thinking

It is hard to teach a person how to meditate because it is a very personal discipline. Table 12.3 lists ideas that may be helpful in practicing Biblical meditation.

Table 12.3 Things to think about during Biblical meditation	
God's unfailing love	
	<i>Within your temple, O God, we meditate on your unfailing love. (Psalm 48:9)</i>
God's works	
	<i>I will meditate on your works and consider all your mighty deeds. (Psalm 77:12)</i>
	📖 See also Psalm 143:5.
God's precepts	
	<i>I meditate on your precepts and consider your ways. (Psalm 119:15)</i>
	📖 See also Psalm 119:78.
God's decrees ("decrees" means established laws or rules)	
	<i>I reach out my hands for your commandments, which I love, and I meditate on your decrees. (Psalm 119:48)</i>
	📖 See also Psalm 119:23.
God's wonders	
	<i>Let me understand the teaching of your precepts; then I will meditate on your wonders. (Psalm 119:27)</i>
God's law	
	<i>Oh, how I love your law! I meditate on it all day long. (Psalm 119:97)</i>
God's statutes	
	<i>I have more insight than all my teachers, for I meditate on your statutes. (Psalm 119:99)</i>
God's promises	
	<i>My eyes stay open through the watches of the night, that I may meditate on your promises. (Psalm 119:148)</i>
Whatever is true, noble, right, pure, lovely, admirable, excellent, praise worthy	
	<i>Finally, brothers, whatever is true, whatever is noble, whatever is right, whatever is pure, whatever is lovely, whatever is admirable – if anything is excellent or praiseworthy – think about such things. (Philippians 4:8)</i>


5) Practical ideas for Biblical meditation

- Begin with prayer and praise, acknowledging your need for the Lord's direction.
- Select Scripture(s) on which to meditate.
- Read each verse slowly.
- Stop and think about verses that have special meaning to you.
- Think about each word carefully. Attempt to fully understand each important word and phrase.
- Remember, God is the hero of the Bible's story. Always consider what there is to know and understand about Him. Ask yourself: What do I learn about the Lord from this text?
- Remain sensitive to the Holy Spirit as He reveals fresh insights.
- As you think about the verses, you may want to ask the following questions:
 - Is there a promise to accept?
 - Is there a command to follow?
 - Is there something I should do?
 - Is there something I should stop doing?
 - Is there a general principle to follow?
 - Is there a truth about God to believe?
 - Is there a truth about God for which I can praise and worship the Lord?
 - Is there a portion of the Scripture that I can use as prayer for myself or others?

If you are keeping a journal, write these insights in your journal.



D. The skill of memorization

Memorizing Scripture is useful for training the mind to meditate deeply on God's Word. A memorized Scripture is always available in the mind of the believer. When you have Bible verses stored in your mind, you can use them as Jesus did when He was tempted by Satan.  See Matthew 4:1-11. Jesus pushed back Satan's temptations by saying memorized Scripture to him. Jesus quoted Deuteronomy 8:3, Psalm 91:11-12 and Deuteronomy 6:13. Believers may not always have a Bible with them, but if they have memorized Scripture, they will always have it to help them

during times of trials and temptations, as well as for use in ministry to others.

1) What does the Bible say about memorizing Scripture?

“Hiding God’s word in your heart” and “storing God’s commands” are phrases found in the Bible that mean “to memorize.” Table 12.4 lists some of the benefits of memorizing Scripture.

Table 12.4 Benefits from memorized Scripture	
It helps in resisting temptation.	
	<i>I have hidden your word in my heart that I might not sin against you. (Psalm 119:11)</i>
It helps in making wise decisions.	
	<i>My son, keep my words and store up my commands within you. Keep my commands and you will live; guard my teachings as the apple of your eye. Bind them on your fingers; write them on the tablet of your heart. (Proverbs 7:1-3)</i>
It strengthens believers when they are weak and burdened.	
	<i>The law of his God is in his heart; his feet do not slip. (Psalm 37:31)</i>
It comforts the heart during sad and difficult times.	
	<i>I remember our ancient laws, O LORD, and I find comfort in them. (Psalm 119:52)</i>

As seen from Table 12.4, storing Scripture in this way has great value to the believer. Memorizing Scripture is a good discipline to add to one’s life. Make time each day for memorization. Diagram 12.2, presented later in this lesson, gives Bible texts on various topics that believers might want to memorize.

2) Practical ideas to memorize Scripture

The following memorization techniques have helped others develop the discipline of memorizing Scripture.

- Pick a verse that seems to have special meaning to you. Write down the chapter and verse so that you can memorize it later.
- Write the Bible text on paper or in your journal. Write it in such a way that the words stand out in your mind. You may want to illustrate the verse with a picture.

- Write the verse on a small card that you can take with you.
- Repeat the verse. Say the verse out loud many times. It is good to literally HEAR God's Word spoken.
- Review the verse throughout your daily activities.
- Observe the verse's important words and phrases.
- Think about the meaning of the important repeated words and phrases. Emphasize those words when saying the verse out loud.
- Put the verse to music by making it into a song.
- Find someone who will memorize Scripture with you.
- Say the verse 10 times as fast as you can.
- For one minute, see how many times you can say the verse.
- Practice the verses you have memorized in the past at least once a week.



Journaling Tool

Purpose

Journaling means to make a written record of one's experiences, ideas, thoughts or prayers. The practice of keeping a journal may accompany Bible study and meditation. A journal may include Bible study notes as well as insights on the Scriptures. Journaling can be helpful when remembering God's faithfulness in the past. It also serves as a way to preserve insights into His Word for future review. A journal can also be an excellent resource when teaching a lesson or a preaching a sermon to others.

How to journal

1. Collect the things necessary to journal. They include a Bible, paper in a notebook and something with which to write.
2. Find a time in the day when you are free to write and can quietly reflect on the Lord.
3. Consider writing in your journal as part of your daily time with the Lord. The following are examples of things about which you can write.

- Prayers to the Lord. There are different kinds of prayers you may write:
 - Prayers of praise and worship to the Lord
 - Prayer requests for those who are in need
 - Prayers about your struggles, temptations and trials
 - Prayers for insight into your problems
 - Prayers of thanksgiving
 - Insights into Scriptures: Observation, Interpretation or Application thoughts that you discovered during your Bible reading.
 - Scriptures you may want to memorize.
 - Notes from sermons you want to think about again so that you can make further study and application.
3. Write thoughts from your heart and not from your head. This is a way to focus your mind and collect your thoughts. Sometimes when writing what is on your mind, the Lord reveals important insights.
4. Keep your journal private so you can be free to express yourself without the fear of criticism and judgment of others. Your journal is between you and the Lord.

Diagram 12.2 Suggested verses to memorize on various topics

<p>Gospel facts:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• All have sinned (Romans 3:23, Isaiah 53:6)• Penalty of sin (Romans 6:23)• Penalty paid by Christ (Romans 5:8, 1 Peter 3:18)• Salvation is a free gift and not by works (Ephesians 2:8-9, Titus 3:4-5)• We must receive Christ (John 1:12, Revelation 3:20)• Trust Christ (Romans 10:9)• Assurance of salvation – Eternal life with God (Romans 8,1-2, 1 John 5:11-13, John 5:24)• God's love (John 3:16, Romans 8:35-39)• God's plan (Ephesians 2:10, Philippians 3:12-14) <p>Live the new life:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Believer's new life (2 Corinthians 5:17, Gal 2:20)• Transformed mind (Rom 12:1-2)• Obedience to Christ (Jn 14:21)• The Scriptures (2 Tim 3:16)• Meditation (Joshua 1:8)• Prayer (John 15:7, Php 4:6-7)• Fellowship (Matthew 18:20, Hebrews 10:24-25)• Witnessing (Matthew 28:18-20, Acts 1:7-8, Romans 1:16)• Preach the Word of God (2 Timothy 4:2) <p>Rely on God's resources:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• His provision (2 Peter 1:3-4, Romans 8:28-32, Philippians 4:19)• His Spirit (Romans 8:9-11, Galatians 5:16)• His strength (Isaiah 41:10, Philippians 4:13)• His presence (Hebrews 13:5-6)• His faithfulness (Lamentations 3:22-26, Hebrews 10:23)• His peace (Isaiah 26:3, Philippians 4:7)	<p>Be the Lord's disciple:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Put Jesus and His Kingdom first (Matthew 6:33, Luke 9:23-24)• Do not love worldly things (1 John 2:15-17, Romans 12:1-2)• Do not give up (Galatians 6:9-10, 1 Corinthians 15:58, Hebrews 10:23)• Serve others (Mark 10:43-45, 1 Peter 4:10, Galatians 5:13, Eph 6:7)• Give generously (Proverbs 3:9-10, 2 Corinthians 9:6-7) <p>Grow in Christ-likeness:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Love (1 Corinthians 13, John 13:34-35, 1 John 3:16-18)• Humility (Philippians 2:3-4, 1 Peter 5:5-6)• Purity (Ephesians 5:3, 1 Timothy 5:22)• Honesty (Col 3:9, Lev 19:11)• Faith (Hebrews 11:6, Rom 1:17)• Good works (Ephesians 2:10, Matthew 5:16)• Fruit of the Holy Spirit (Galatians 5:22-23) <p>Help for believers:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Forgiveness of sin (1 John 1:9)• Guilt (Psalm 103:12, Psalm 51)• Guidance (Proverbs 3:5-6, James 1:1-5)• Depression (Psalms 42, 43)• Fear (2 Timothy 1:7)• Temptation (1 Corinthians 10:13, Hebrews 2:18, James 1:12-14)• Worry (Matthew 6:25-34, Philippians 4:6, 1 Peter 5:6-7)• Doubt (James 1:5-12)• Critical, bitter spirit (Heb 12:15)• Suffering (2 Peter 4:12-19)• Hopelessness (1 John 5:14-15, Ephesians 3:20-21)• Materialism (Col 3:1-2, 1 John 2:15-17)• Death of a believer (John 14:1-4, 1 Cor 15:50-58, 2 Cor 5:8-10)• Inability to sleep (Psalm 4:8)
--	---



Lesson 12 Activity Assignments

Class Activity

1. Choose one of the memory games explained on the following page to play in class. Memorize 2 Timothy 3:16-17.
2. Discussion points/questions
 - What is the difference between meditation as required by some religions and Biblical meditation?
 - Why might it benefit a believer to keep a journal?
 - Has anyone in class kept a journal? Was it helpful? Why?

Student Activity

1. Practice meditation and journaling.
 - Read Psalm 119 over a week's time. (You may only want to read part of Psalm 119 since there are 179 verses in this Psalm.)
 - As you read, write verses that seem to speak to you.
 - Meditate on those special verses.
 - Write in your journal about the insights the Lord gives you.

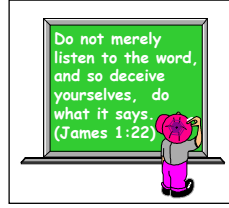
Further Study Activity

1. Continue the practice of meditation and journaling. Does this help your fellowship with the Lord?
2. Find someone who will memorize Scripture with you. Commit to meet once a week with your memory partner to practice your Scriptures.

These two games are given to help you memorize Scripture in a fun way.

Game 1: Erase a Word – A Bible memory game

- a. Write the Scripture on a chalk or white board. Include the Bible reference. If a chalk or white board is not available, the words can be written on cards and taped to the wall. Use the following steps to play the game. (If you are using cards taped to the wall, remove cards instead of erasing words.)
- b. Have the class repeat the verse together.
- c. Then one at a time, either the teacher (or a student) will erase or remove one word. The class will again repeat it together.
- d. Continue removing words and repeating the Scripture until there are no words left.
- e. By the end of the game, each student should be able to say the verse.
- f. You can continue the exercise by having the students write the words back on the chalk or whiteboard. Take turns writing the Scripture one word at a time in order.



Game 2: Relay Bible memory game

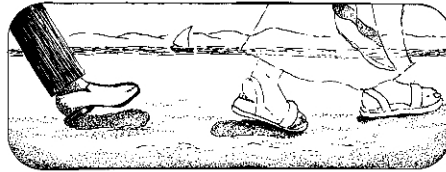
- a. Write the words of the memory verse, including the Scripture reference, on two sets of cards. Depending on the length of the verse and the number of people in the class, these could be individual words or phrases.
- b. Mix up the cards in each set. Be careful to keep the sets separate.
- c. Place the cards at the end of the room.
- d. Divide the students into two teams.
- e. Have each team member go one by one and pick up a card, taking it back to their group.
- f. After all the cards are gathered, each team puts the verse together.
- g. The first team to put it together correctly wins!



APPLICATION: Respond

Objectives

- Learn Step 3 of Application: Decide and take action
- Learn about repentance
- Learn Step 4: Watching for transformation
- Practice using all the steps of application



Key Verse

Do not merely listen to the word, and so deceive yourselves. Do what it says. (James 1:22)

When God reveals Bible truths to believers, He always requires some kind of response. Depending on the type of truth, appropriate responses range from simple worship to major lifestyle changes. These responses are the critical, final steps of application. If Bible study does not result in successful application, it often results in self deception. That is what the key verse is saying. This lesson provides steps, tools and activities designed to help believers apply Bible truths wisely.



Step 3: Decide and take action

Steps of application	
Step 1	Identify the appropriate applications
Step 2	Connect your life to Bible truths
Step 3	Decide and take action (repentance) ←
Step 4	Watch for the transformation ←

Step 3 is about change. It includes the following areas:

- Changing one's mind through repentance.
- Taking action to accomplish changes.
- Following through when attempting difficult lifestyle changes.

A. Decide: Think differently

In the New Testament, the word "repentance" means to change one's mind. Each believer's first encounter with Biblical repentance came when they believed the gospel. Repentance is part of the gospel message. Review the following few examples:

- John the Baptist announced the coming of Jesus by calling for repentance. (Matthew 3:2)
- Jesus taught repentance during His ministry. (Matthew 4:17, Luke 5:32, 15:10)
- Jesus' disciples preached repentance (Mark 6:12)
- Peter and Paul also preached repentance as part of the gospel. (Acts 3:19, 12:38, 17:30, 20:21)
- Other cross-references regarding the word repentance: Romans 2:4, 2 Corinthians 7:8-10, 2 Timothy 2:25, Hebrews 6:1, Revelation 2:5.

1) What is repentance?

Repentance is the command of God to change one's mind and to run away from sin. It is a necessary preparation for receiving the love and forgiveness of God through Jesus. True repentance for sin contains these aspects:



- **Remorse for sin**, which is any thought, word or action that is inconsistent with God's character and plans.
- **Desire to return** to fellowship with God and remain in His care.
- **Willingness to obey** His guidance and trust Him at all costs.

God births a new, spiritual nature in every believer at the moment of salvation. However, the old nature and a lifetime of sinful habits are not eliminated immediately. This is why the exercise of repentance is a key to continued spiritual growth. A believer's relationship with God does not become stale when it is regularly renewed through repentance and faith. Here are some ways that Biblical repentance can prepare believers to make changes in their lives:

- **Biblical repentance places everything into proper perspective.** People tend to live in denial about their own sinfulness. When sinners come to God in repentance, they acknowledge that He is a holy God who is greatly offended by sin. They take personal responsibility for their own sinfulness and do not make excuses.
- **Biblical repentance signals an end to rebellion against God.** God is the supreme ruler of His creation. All sin is a denial of His absolute authority. Repentance offers sinners the opportunity to ask His forgiveness and to be restored into His loving fellowship.
- **Biblical repentance opens the way for Biblical faith.** The promises of God through Jesus are the "good news" of the gospel. After the honest self-examination of repentance, believers can better appreciate the amazing grace God shows to them through Jesus.

2) **Why is repentance important to application?**

Application changes the life of the believer, bringing it into harmony with the Word of God. When Scripture reveals some kind of sin, repentance is the essential first step in making the changes required for application.

Repentance is the perfect compliment to application. It focuses the believer's attention on the important reasons for change and indicates what decisions should be made. Repentance prepares the believer to be willing to make any sacrifices necessary to please God.

3) Why change?

Genuine followers of Jesus are not satisfied with mere knowledge of the Bible. They choose to aggressively apply Bible truths to their everyday lives. Successful application of Scripture allows believers to progress on their spiritual journey. Failure to apply Scripture can be dangerous. In Matthew 7, Jesus teaches about the importance of obeying His Words.

Therefore everyone who hears these words of mine and puts them into practice is like a wise man who built his home on the rock. The rain came down, the streams rose, and the winds blew and beat against that house; yet it did not fall, because it had its foundation on the rock. But everyone who hears these words of mine and does not put them into practice is like a foolish man who built his house on sand. The rain came down, the streams rose, and the winds blew and beat against that house, and it fell with a great crash. (Matthew 7:24-27)

Both houses in this metaphor may have been beautiful to look at and very nice to live in. In the end, however, the unseen foundation was the most important feature. The foundation ultimately determines whether a house stands or falls in the face of bad weather. In this teaching, the foundations represent choices made regarding the application of Jesus' words. Application of the Word of God is the only safe foundation for a life that is successful in the eyes of God. Life on earth presents believers with opportunities to reflect God's character. Failing to use those opportunities will result in loss. 📖 See also John 15:5-11, Titus 1:10-16, 1 Corinthians 3:11-15, Mark 4:21-25 and John 7:17.

4) Following Jesus is worth the cost

Being a disciple of Jesus means to turn from old ways of thinking and acting. Doing this may bring problems. For example, family and friends may not understand or approve of new choices. Jesus warned his disciples that following Him would cost them something.

Then Jesus said to his disciples, "If anyone would come after me, he must deny himself and take up his cross and follow me. For whoever wants to save his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life for me will find it." (Matthew 16:24-27)

📖 See also Matthew 10:34-38 and Luke 14:28-33.

Does sacrificing old ways of living and thinking seem like a high price to pay for being a disciple? Remember that it is the only way to obtain the abundant life offered by Jesus. Nothing in this sinful world can match the treasure of eternal life with God. Paul puts it this way:

I consider that our present sufferings are not worth comparing with the glory that will be revealed in us. (Romans 8:18)

To be considered a disciple of Jesus is the highest honor this life has to offer. What could be more important than following Him? Nothing!

B. Take action

Application of Scripture does not always require repentance and turning from sin. Sometimes application calls for a simple response like praise and thanksgiving. However, when it calls for repentance and a radical change of lifestyle, believers should also respond eagerly with grateful hearts. When trying to determine a correct response to truths discovered in Scripture, it is helpful to ask questions like these:

- Is there a sin to confess or avoid?
- Is there a promise to claim?
- Is there an attitude that needs to change?
- Is there a command to obey?
- Is there an example to follow?
- Is there an encouragement to receive?
- Is there a truth about God that inspires worship and praise?
- Is there a need for specific prayer?
- Is there a truth in the text to believe?

1) How to make difficult changes

Applying God's Word may be done in different ways. Sometimes Biblical truths can be applied simply and swiftly. Others require difficult changes and may take longer. Bad lifelong habits are usually the most difficult to change.

Most believers struggle at some time in their Christian journey with unbelief, unforgiveness, sinful thoughts, sinful habits or even destructive addictions. It takes faith and hard work to correct them, even with the Holy Spirit's help. How can a believer know that an application will need more than a quick and easy change? The following questions can help

determine the proper response to the Lord's conviction to change. Here are some good questions to ask when considering such a change:

- Does the application require changing a bad habit or long held false belief?
- Does the application mean overcoming an addiction?
- Does the application mean making a change to the direction of my life?
- Does the application require adding a good habit to my life?

Believers must approach major changes in these areas with careful planning and determination.

a. Planning the change

Thoughtful planning increases the likelihood of successful application in difficult areas. Asking appropriate questions before attempting application is an important part of making a good plan. 📖 Read Luke 14:28-33. Here are examples of helpful questions to ask when preparing for a difficult application:

- What specific prayer is needed?
- Are there specific Scripture verses to memorize that apply to the problem and offer hope and faith?
- Are there specific places or situations to avoid?
- Are there specific people or other resources that may help ensure success?
- Who could help you be accountable for this change?

b. Making the change

Fearlessly making needed changes one day at a time always produces the best results. Some believers are tempted to give up when beginning a difficult change. They become discouraged when considering the task ahead. Scripture says that God is faithful to provide strength for every needed change. However, mature believers have learned that God's grace comes one day at a time. They do not allow themselves to dwell on past failures or possible problems in the future. Like manna given to Israel in the wilderness (Exodus 16:14-20), God's grace is provided only for today. This keeps believers dependent upon God everyday. Why worry? The past cannot be changed and the future cannot be known. Jesus explained it this way:

Therefore do not worry about tomorrow, for tomorrow will worry about itself. Each day has enough trouble of its own. (Matthew 6:34)

📖 Read also Matthew 6:11, Hebrews 4:16 and 13:8.

c. Becoming accountable to others for that change

Destructive behaviors do not become habits overnight. Often, they developed early in life. The root causes of these habits are important to identify and understand when making plans to eliminate them.

Digging into sensitive areas of one's past can be difficult and painful. In cases like this, it can be helpful to ask for the aid of another trusted believer. This adds an element of accountability to the process, as well as protection against discouragement. Here are some reasons why it can be helpful to have an accountability partner.

- They can give an impartial evaluation of the application.
- They can ask specific questions about the progress of the change, helping to keep it on track.
- They can provide advice, encouragement and prayer, especially when there is a danger of giving up.

Accountability partners should be of the same gender (unless it is your spouse). It is also best when they have had successful experiences in similar applications.

The church is designed to work best when believers are helpfully involved in each other's lives. Consider these verses:

Therefore confess your sins to each other and pray for each other so that you may be healed. The prayer of a righteous man is powerful and effective. (James 5:16)

Carry each other's burdens, and in this way you will fulfill the law of Christ. (Galatians 6:2-3)

The added encouragement and objectivity provided by another believer during a difficult change can make the difference between success and failure. 📖 Read Proverbs 27:6, Ecclesiastes 4:9-10, John 13:35, Hebrews 3:13 and 10:24.

d. Do not give up!

Every believer will fail sometimes in their attempts to apply Scripture to their lives. When this happens, it is very important to try again and not give in to discouragement. God assures victory to the committed believer, but there may be many battles to fight before it is consistently achieved. It is like the story in Scripture about the children of Israel inheriting the land of Canaan. Although God had already given them the land, Israel was commanded to drive out the inhabitants and take it by force. 📖 See Deuteronomy 20:1-4. Their victory was assured, but they could only claim the victory through combat. In New Testament times, God wants every believer to claim victory over sin through spiritual warfare. He wants His children to be strong, obedient spiritual warriors. 📖 Read, 2 Corinthians 10:4-5 and Ephesians 6:10-18.

Discouragement can be a powerful enemy. It can prevent a believer from receiving God's forgiveness and trying again to walk in His victory. Genuine salvation is not attained or maintained by one's own works or abilities. It is the Lord alone that makes believers worthy to live with Him forever. Keep trusting Him. In Paul's final words to Timothy, he writes:

The Lord will rescue me from every evil attack and will bring me safely to his heavenly kingdom. To him be glory for ever and ever. Amen. (2 Timothy 4:18)

A wonderful truth is given to believers in Hebrews 7:24.

but because Jesus lives forever, he has a permanent priesthood. Therefore he is able to save completely those who come to God through him, because he always lives to intercede for them. (Hebrews 7:24-25)

📖 Read 2 Peter 1: 3-7. This text explains the two parts necessary for victory over sin:

- The Lord gives believers everything they need to walk in godliness. This includes provisions to overcome difficult habits and strength to do the good works He has called His people to do.

His divine power has given us everything we need for life and godliness through our knowledge of him who called us by his own glory and goodness. Through these he has given us his very great and precious promises, so that through them you

may participate in the divine nature and escape the corruption in the world caused by evil desires. (2 Peter 3-4)

- Believers must be responsible to make an effort toward overcoming their own sin. It may be a struggle to overcome bad habits and establish good ones. Willingness to work for change is proof of a believer's dedication to the Lord.

For this very reason, make every effort to add to your faith goodness; and to goodness, knowledge; and to knowledge, self-control; and to self-control, perseverance; and to perseverance, godliness; and to godliness, brotherly kindness; and to brotherly kindness, love. (2 Peter 1:5-8)

Persistently trusting in God's grace can keep the believer from discouragement. Always trust in His power and love. Like any good father, God instructs and disciplines His wayward children. He does not disown them. 📖 See also Hebrews 12:4-12. Repentant believers can confidently trust God to eventually perfect them. He will keep them in His care forever.

Believers must not dwell too long on their past failures. Instead, they should meditate on the power of God and the promises He has made. All successful application ultimately comes from Him. Paul speaks of forgetting the past and straining toward what is ahead. 📖 See Philippians 3:12-14. Another word of encouragement is found in the text below.

Let us fix our eyes on Jesus, the author and perfecter of our faith. ... (Hebrews 12:2)

📖 Read John 10:28-30, Hebrews 13 5:-6, 2 Thessalonians 3:3 and Romans 8:1, 31-39.



Step 4: Watch for transformation

A. What is transformation?

Effective application brings transformation. Transformation is God's method of gradually revealing the character of Jesus in every believer. It is like the work of someone who forms clay into pottery. Clay is taken from the ground, formed into useful shapes and baked in an oven.

It is then ready for use and always bears the unique marks of the one who made it. In similar fashion, God saves the hopeless person who obeys His call to repentance and faith (like gathering clay from the ground). He then works on this new believer with His Word and His Spirit (like molding the clay into useful shapes). He allows His children to be strengthened by enduring the hardships of this world (like baking the clay to form pottery). The end result is transformation – the character of Jesus shines through the believer. They become tools of God to continue the work of Jesus in this world. Paul is writing of this gradual transformation process when he says:



And we, who with unveiled faces all reflect the Lord's glory, are being transformed into his likeness with ever-increasing glory, which comes from the Lord, who is the Spirit. (2 Cor 3:15-18)

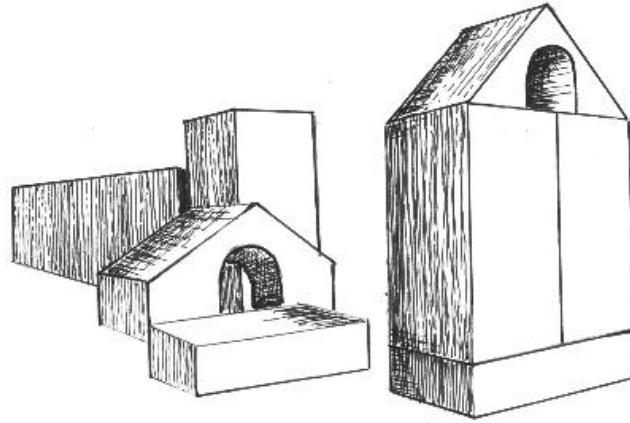
B. The results of transformation

One way to remain encouraged during application is to watch for good things that happen as a result of your obedience. What are these good things? Some results that come from obedient application of Scripture.

Table 13.1 Results of transformation	
Result	Scripture & Reference
Believers know the Lord better.	
	<i>What is more, I consider everything a loss compared to the surpassing greatness of knowing Christ Jesus my Lord, for whose sake I have lost all things. I consider them rubbish, that I may gain Christ and be found in him, not having a righteousness of my own that comes from the law, but that which is through faith in Christ – the righteousness that comes from God and is by faith. I want to know Christ and the power of his resurrection and the fellowship of sharing in his sufferings, becoming like him in his death. (Php 3:8-10)</i>
	📖 See Eph 3: 7-19, John 8:32, John 10:14, John 7:17.
Believers act like Jesus in character and works.	
	<i>We know that we have come to know him if we obey his commands. The man who says, "I know him," but does not do what he commands is a liar, and the truth is not in him. But if anyone obeys his word, God's love is truly made complete in him. This is how we know we are in him: Whoever claims to live in him must walk as Jesus did. (1 John 2:3-6)</i>
	📖 See also Galatians 5:22-26.

Table 13.1 Results of transformation	
Result	Scripture & Reference
Believers are equipped for service.	
	<i>All Scripture is God-breathed and is useful for teaching, rebuking, correcting and training in righteousness, so that the man of God may be thoroughly equipped for every good work. (2 Timothy 3:16-17)</i>
	Comment: This text lists four primary ways the Bible equips believers for service: 1. Teaching which shows a believer what is right . 2. Rebuking which shows a believer what is not right . 3. Correcting which shows a believer how to get right . 4. Training which shows a believer how to stay right .
The church grows.	
	<i>Instead, speaking the truth in love, we will in all things grow up into him who is the Head, that is, Christ. From him the whole body, joined and held together by every supporting ligament, grows and builds itself up in love, as each part does its work. (Ephesians 4:15-16)</i>
	📖 See also 1 Corinthians 3:6-9, 1 Corinthians 12:1-30.
Your community and nations are blessed.	
	<i>The Scripture foresaw that God would justify the Gentiles by faith, and announced the gospel in advance to Abraham: "All nations will be blessed through you." So those who have faith are blessed along with Abraham, the man of faith. (Galatians 3:8-9)</i>
	📖 See also Romans 16:26.
God is praised and glorified	
	<i>Because of the service by which you have proved yourselves, men will praise God for the obedience that accompanies your confession of the gospel of Christ, and for your generosity in sharing with them and with everyone else. (2 Corinthians 9:13)</i>
	📖 See also Matthew 5:16 and Ezekiel 36:22-23.

Putting it all together for Application



Here is an example of the four steps of Application. Each step is like a block that builds on the other steps. The text used for the steps of application is the same as that used for the steps of observation, interpretation and application.

What you heard from me, keep as the pattern of sound teaching, with faith and love in Christ Jesus. Guard the good deposit that was entrusted to you – guard it with the help of the Holy Spirit who lives in us. (2 Timothy 1:13-14)

The following example works through the steps of application regarding the Scripture above. As you read this example, consider how each answer builds on the work already done during the observation and interpretation phases of your study. Take time to look up the cross references where this topic is also addressed. The cross references reveal other places in the Bible which repeat similar exhortations. Note: Many of these cross references were found during the interpretation phase of discovery Bible study.

To refresh your memory, look at Lessons 4 and 8 which include a review and “Putting it all together” examples.



Step 1: Identify the appropriate application

Asking questions of the Bible Text - 2 Timothy 1:13-14	
Who was the intended audience at the time when it was written or said?	Paul was writing Timothy.
Is the text addressed to a limited audience?	Yes and no. Paul was writing a letter to Timothy; however it is to all believers.
Is the text addressed to all believers in all generations, in all circumstances?	Yes. The commands in this text are for all disciples of Jesus at all times.
Why is it a limited audience?	
Was the audience to a specific group of people at a specific time?	The group of people to which this is applicable are believers.
Was the audience limited by a specific covenant for a specific people group?	Yes. This is applicable to all people under the new covenant who have faith in Jesus for salvation.
What is the direct command or the general <u>principle</u> ?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Keep (teach and adhere to) the pattern of sound teaching found in the Bible. • Guard the sound teaching patterns with the help of the Holy Spirit from false teachers and error.
Where in the rest of Scripture is this command or principle discussed? Use your skills of cross referencing.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Keep and guard sound teaching patterns: Matthew 16:5-12, 13:22-23, Luke 12:1, John 8:31-21, Acts 20:25-31, Php 3:15-18, 6:3-5, 1 Tim 4:1-5, 6:20-21, Titus 1:6-9, 2:1, 1 Pet 3:17.
When should I apply this text?	At all times.



Step 2: Connect your life to Bible truths

- **In light of my past history, is there something in this text for me to apply?**

I am so thankful that I have the Bible in my language to read the true pattern of sound teaching. I am also thankful for the many Bible study books and Bible teachers that I have had over the years who have taught me sound doctrine and Bible study methods. Like Timothy, I too have been a learner, making every effort to learn the Word of God. As both a learner and a teacher of the Word of God in the past, I need to heed these words in 2 Timothy 1:13-14.

I have seen the destruction that false teachings have had on individuals and on churches. God's people get hurt and some fall away from the faith as a result of teachings that are contrary to sound doctrine. I want to do everything in my power to see that the truth is taught so errors can not grow.

- **In light of my current circumstances, is there something in this text for me to apply?**

Currently I am teaching the Bible in several different groups.

- **In light of my future goals and plans, is there something in this for me to apply?**

As a believer and as one with a teaching gift, I plan to teach the Word of God to others, both formally and informally. Therefore, I need to follow these instructions given by Paul.



Step 3: Decide and take action

- **Is there a sin to confess or avoid?**
No.
- **Is there a promise for me to claim?**
Yes. The promise of the Holy Spirit's indwelling to help in guarding the sound teaching I have received.
- **Do I need to change my attitudes?**
No.
- **Is there a command for me to obey?**
Yes. Keep and guard the pattern of sound teaching with faith and love in Jesus.
- **Is there an example for me to follow?**
Yes. Follow both Paul's and Timothy's example.
- **Is there an encouragement for me to receive?**
Yes. Encouragement is to keep on studying the Scripture.
- **Is there a truth about God that inspires worship and praise?**
Yes. Praise for the Holy Spirit's help!
- **Does this text move me to pray specifically about a situation?**
Yes. Pray for new believers in Asia that they be taught sound doctrine, guarded from error and false teachers.
- **Is there a truth in the text for me to believe? Does my life really reflect what I think or say I believe?**
Yes. I need to have faith that God's Holy Spirit will help me to learn and retain sound doctrine. I must trust God for His help in this area.



Step 3: Decide and take action (continued)

- Does the application require changing a bad habit or long held false beliefs?

No.

- Does the application mean making a change to the direction of your life?

No.

- Does the application require adding a good habit to your life?

Yes. The good habit that I need to add to my life is reading books and listening to teaching by well respected teachers in the Body of Christ – the universal church.

For a difficult change

• Plan the change	
	The good habit that I need to add to my life is reading books and listening to teaching by well respected and balanced teachers in the Body of Christ, the universal church.
• Make the change (When)	
	I will begin this week by watching less television and reading the Christian books that I have not yet read because I say I do not have time.
• Find an accountability partner	
	My prayer group at church.



Step 4: Watch for transformation

- **What are the good things that have happened as a result of my obedience?**

I have more things to teach those with whom I come in contact since I have been filling my mind with sound teaching.



Lesson 13 Activity Assignments

Class Activity

1. Divide the class into small teams of two people per team. Read 2 Timothy 2:14-16. (You may want to read the whole chapter to remind you of the context.) Each team is to work through the steps of application for 15 minutes. Use Figure 13.1 for this activity. As a class, discuss your results.

Student Activity

1. Read 2 Timothy 3:1-9. Pick one or more verses that you wish to work through the steps of application. Diagram 13.2 is a blank application process form to use to write your answers.

Further Study Activity

1. Using the discovery method of Bible study, do a topical study on one of these words – lying, deceit or false speaking. Use the steps you learned in Observation, Interpretation and Application.

Appendix 1

Important Words: Glossary

Allegory – A type of figurative language used for comparison. It tells a fictional, symbolic story that sends a message. (Lesson 7)

Apocrypha – Roman Catholic Bibles contain a short collection of books called the Apocrypha. They are writings created during the time between the last book of the Old Testament, Malachai, and the books of the New Testament. They are helpful in understanding the Jews of this era and their history, but were not judged to be inerrant and therefore not included in the canon of the Bible. (Lesson 1)

Apostle – The Greek word *apostolos* means “one who is sent.” There are two categories of apostles:

- Those who saw the risen Jesus and were personally commissioned by Him to establish the first churches
- Those who are gifted according to Ephesians 4:11, one of several ministries given to build up and edify the church until the Lord returns (Lesson 9)

📖 Read also 1 Timothy 1:1, Galatians 1:1, 11-12, 2 Corinthians 12:12 and Colossians 1:25.

Application – This is the last phase of the Discovery Bible Study method. It answers the question: “What does the Scripture mean to me?” Application calls for the Bible student to put into practice the knowledge they have learned in the other two phases of Discovery Bible Study. (Lessons 10, 11, 12, 13)

Believer(s) – In this manual, “believers” refer to Christians. Christians are those who believe:

- they are sinners and need someone (Jesus) to save them from their sins. (Romans 3:23)
- Jesus died for them on the cross. By doing this, Jesus paid the price (penalty) for their sin. (Romans 5:6-11)
- Jesus rose from the dead, making it possible for believers (Christians) to be part of God’s family, live eternally with Him, and have the Holy Spirit live in their hearts. (John 1:12, John 3:16-21, Romans 10:8-13) **Note:** See the “Apostles’ Creed,” in Lesson 9.

Believers are those who make Jesus Lord, Boss and King of their life. When a person becomes a “believer,” it is said they are “born again.” Believers no longer live for their own selfish desires, but for the Lord Jesus and His Kingdom. (Romans 6:11-14) Believers follow Jesus by knowing, understanding and applying the Bible as they listen to the Holy Spirit. Christians are God’s children who have become part of his church when they repent and believe in Jesus. See Appendix 2, “How to become a Christian” for more details. (Appendix 2)

Bereans – These were people who inhabited Berea, a city in what is now the country of Greece. The term “Berean” is used in this manual to describe people who wisely study the Bible to verify truth. (Acts 17:10-11) (Lesson 3)

Book study – Performing all three phases of discovery Bible study on an entire book of the Bible. By doing the activities presented in this manual, a student will complete a book study of 2 Timothy. (Lesson 1)

Character study – Performing all three steps of discovery Bible study concentrating on a particular person found in the Bible. (Lessons 1, 8)

Christian – See the word “Believer(s).” (Introduction)

Commentary – Something spoken or written that gives information and opinions about the interpretation and application of Scripture. (Lesson 8)

Concordance – A concordance is an alphabetic listing of Bible words with references that indicate where they are found throughout the Bible. It is helpful when researching how a word in a text is used in other parts of the Bible. (Lesson 8)

Context – An understanding of how a text fits in with the surrounding verses and chapters, as well as conditions at the time it was first spoken or written. Knowing the context of the Bible text is very important to understanding the meaning and application of Scripture. (Lessons 2, 6, 7)

Core doctrines of Christianity – These are basic truths derived from Scripture that are essential for a correct understanding of God and His plan for mankind. Core doctrines were primarily established early in Church history and are explained with more detail in the first EGI manual, *Basic Beliefs of Christianity*. (Lesson 9)

Cross-reference (s) – A cross-reference is a chapter and verse reference that points to more information on a topic. For example 2 Timothy 4:2 uses the word “preach.” All cross-references for the word “preach” in the New Testament are shown in the following table. (Lessons 8, 13)

Cross references for the word “preach”			
Matthew 4:17	Matthew 10:7	Matthew 11:1	Matthew 23:3
Mark 1:38	Mark 3:14	Mark 16:15	Luke 4:18
Luke 4:43	Luke 9:2	Acts 9:20	Acts 10:42
Acts 14:7	Acts 16:10	Acts 20:20	Romans 1:15
Romans 2:21	Romans 10:15	Romans 15:20	1 Cor 1:17
1 Cor 1:23	1 Cor 9:14	1 Cor 9:16	1 Cor 9:16
1 Cor 9:16	1 Cor 9:17	1 Cor 15:11	2 Cor 2:12
2 Cor 4:5	2 Cor 10:16	Galatians 1:8	Galatians 1:16
Galatians 2:2	Ephesians 3:8	Php 1:15	Php 1:17

Discovery Bible Study – This is a method of studying the Bible. This method is logical and organized, using the Bible as the first and primary reference book. It is the method taught in this manual. Its steps include Observation, Interpretation and Application. (Lesson 1, whole manual)

Doctrines – A doctrine is that which is taught. Doctrines can be either true or false. Doctrines that are true are based on the whole of Scripture and use a method of study that leads to right doctrine. (Lesson 9)

Exaggeration (hyperbole) – This is a type of figurative language that expresses something much more or much less than is actually reasonable. It is used by a speaker or writer to gain dramatic effect or emphasis in the mind of the hearer or reader. For example, in Matthew 5:29 Jesus says: “If your right eye causes you to sin, gouge it out ...” He used this extreme language to emphasize the importance of avoiding temptations to sin. Obviously, removing a body part does nothing to control the sinful nature within. Sin cannot be blamed on parts of the human body. Sin comes from evil desires that are obeyed. 📖 Read James 1:14-15, Mark 7:20-23 and Galatians 5:19-21 for more references about sin. (Lesson 6)

False teachers – A false teacher is someone who teaches false doctrine. In this manual, it is a name given to anyone that teaches Biblical error concerning Christian doctrine. (Lesson 9)

Figurative language – Language that describes something using words differently from their normal or literal meaning. Often figurative language is used to compare one thing to another. It includes metaphors, similes, exaggeration, personification, poetry, wisdom literature, parables, allegories, prophecy, symbols and types. (Lesson 6, 7)

Figure of speech – A word, phrase or expression used in an imaginative way to help the hearer or reader understand a message. (Lessons 6, 7)

Grammar – A system of rules that define how a language is structured. (Lesson 5)

Gospel – The gospel is the "the good news," "good message" or "good tidings" of the kingdom of God and of salvation through Jesus. It is to be received by faith, on the basis of His death, His burial, resurrection and ascension. 📖 See 1 Corinthians 15:1-5, Galatians 1:6-2:2, Acts 15:7-10, 20:24, 1 Peter 4:17 and Romans 2:16.

Heresy (Heresies) – Heresy is a word that means basic errors in essential Christian doctrines. In 2 Peter 2:1, heresy meant merely a sect, religious group or faction. (Lesson 9)

Inductive Bible Study – See Discovery Bible Study

Discovery Worksheet – A Bible study tool that is a worksheet designed to capture insights in the Bible study phases of Observation, Interpretation and Application. (Lesson 5, 10)

Important repeated words and phrases – These are words and phrases that help the student to identify the main topics of a text. (Lessons 3, 4)

Interpretation – In this manual, this term is used to describe the second phase of discovery Bible study. It means to discover the author's meaning of a text. Interpretation answers the question: What does it mean? (Lesson 5, 6, 7, 8, 9)

Legalism – A belief that encourages strict and excessive adherence to a code of conduct. It may also include relying on works for salvation or God's favor. (Lesson 10)

Literal language – Literal language is a type of speaking or writing in which the author intends it to be understood by accepting the ordinary meaning of the words. To take language literally means to seek the natural and ordinary meaning of the words and sentences. (Lesson 6)

Metaphor – A type of figurative language which makes an implied comparison between two different things. For example, some texts in the Bible speak of God’s Word as spiritual “bread” and “milk.” These are metaphors used to illustrate the believer’s daily spiritual need for the God’s Word. (Lesson 6)

Mistranslation – This is when someone changes the meaning of the original words of Scripture into other words which change the meaning of the text in order to justify a doctrine. Like the guidelines for interpretation, there are established rules for correctly translating Scripture from one language to another. Someone who mistranslates the original words of Scripture deliberately ignores or distorts those rules to justify false doctrine. Anyone using a mistranslated Bible for Bible study becomes a victim of this evil and deceitful practice. (Lesson 9)

Observation – The part of discovery Bible study in which texts are read carefully to discover both the big picture (context) and the details. Observation answers the question: What does the Bible say? (Lessons 2, 3, 4)

Parable – A parable is a story used to illustrate a moral truth or a spiritual principle. Parables have been called “heavenly stories with earthly meanings.” Parable literally means “to place one thing beside another.” (Lesson 7)

Paragraph – In written language, a paragraph is one or more sentences which relate to one topic. (Lesson 3)

Paraphrase – In this manual, paraphrase means a type of Bible translation that does not use the exact words in the original language but uses words that reflect their meaning. A paraphrase of the Bible can help the reader to better understand difficult texts. It uses language and concepts that are more familiar than those found in the original translation. It should not be the only Bible used for serious Bible study. A genuine, recognized translation gives students the best opportunity to understand the author’s intended meaning using the discovery method of

study. For more information, see Appendix 2, “How to choose a Bible.” (Lesson 8, Appendix 2)

Personification – A type of figurative language in which a non-living thing is spoken about as if it were a person. For example, Psalm 98:8 says: “*Let the rivers clap their hands ...*” (Lessons 6, 7)

Prophecy – Information spoken or written that foretells future events. It can also mean to speak the divine will and purpose of God. (Lesson 7)

Principle – A principle is a guideline, or rule, that helps students correctly use the skills and tools taught in the lessons of this manual. (Lessons 2, 5, 10)

References – Locating texts in the Bible is done by using references. Long ago, translators divided the Bible books into chapters and verses as a way to help everyone know where texts were located. These divisions still apply today and are useful for Bible navigation. For example, Jesus’ words “... *before Abraham was born, I am!*” is found in John 8:58 (the book of John, the 8th chapter and the 58th verse). For more information, see “How to look up verses” in Appendix 2. (Appendix 2)

Signpost Words – These are words that indicate a change in thought or topic. Signpost words may also give a further explanation of the current topic. (Lesson 3)

Simile – A type of figurative language that takes two different things and compares them using certain features that they both have in common. For example, in Matthew 13:31, Jesus said: “*the kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed.*” He was using the small mustard seed to describe the remarkable potential for spiritual growth in the obedient believer. (Lesson 6)

Symbol – A symbol is something that represents something else. For example, the flood of Noah’s time (Genesis 7:4) was a symbol of baptism, which came later through Jesus (1 Peter 3:21). (Lesson 7)

Synonym – A word that has the same meaning as another word.

Topical study – Researching what an idea, place or message means and how it is used in other parts of the Bible. (Lessons 1, 8)

Translations – Changing the words of one language into words that have the same meaning in another language. See Appendix 2 in the section called, “How to choose a Bible,” for a complete explanation. (Lesson 9, Appendix 2)

Type – A type represents something or someone to come. It is different from a symbol because it is prophetic in nature. (Lesson 7)

Word study – Discovering the meaning of a word by noting how it is used in other parts of the Bible. When possible, word studies should also include research that explains a word’s meaning in its original language. (Lessons 1, 8)

Words of contrast – Words of contrast are “signpost” words used to compare the differences between two thoughts or ideas. Examples are: “but,” “however,” “instead” and “nevertheless.” (Lesson 3)

Words of conclusion – Words that complete a thought. They signal the end result of an idea or topic. Examples: “therefore,” “for,” “so that,” “for this reason,” “because,” “so” and “wherefore.” (Lesson 3)

Words of comparison – Words used to compare two things. They show an association of features which are alike that are possessed by each thing. Example: “like,” “as” and “as it were.” (Lesson 3)

Words that express time – Words that indicate the timing or sequence of an event. Examples are: “then,” “after this,” “until,” “now” or “when.” (Lesson 3)

Appendix 2

Additional Resources

- 1. How to become a Christian**
- 2. How to look up a verse**
- 3. How the Bible books are abbreviated in this manual**
- 4. How to choose a Bible**
- 5. How to read through the Bible in one year**
- 6. How to chart the topics of a Bible book**
- 7. How to use various concordances**

1. How to become a Christian

A. What you need to know

God created everything in the universe to display how wonderful He is. He created people to glorify and enjoy Him forever. No one can ever know true happiness until they know Him personally.

God is not like us. He is so different in power, character and knowledge that people could never understand Him without His help.

The problem is this. Mankind is sinful because sin was brought on the human race by Adam (the first man). People are sinful because they commit sins everyday. Sinfulness makes people unable to get close to God.

This problem was solved by God Himself. God sent Jesus, His only son, to die to pay the penalty for sinful people. His gift of forgiveness is given to each one who acknowledges their sinfulness and makes Him the Lord of their lives. Through Jesus' resurrection from the dead, believers can live a new life.

God did this because He loves you. The Bible says:

For God so loved the world that he gave his one and only Son, that whoever believes in him shall not perish but have eternal life. (John 3:16)

But God demonstrates his own love for us in this: While we were still sinners, Christ died for us. (Romans 5:8)

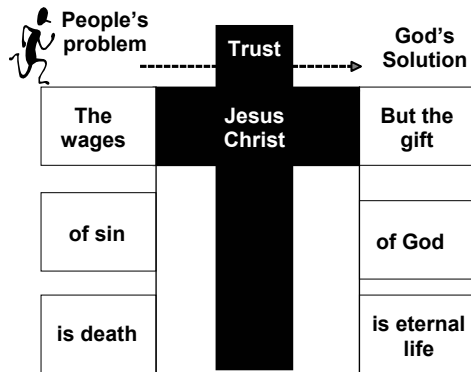
Do you want this free gift? Do you want this opportunity to receive eternal life?

B. What you need to do

The following table provides a guide to coming to know Jesus.

Path to lead you to becoming a Christian	
Admit that you are a sinner and turn away (repent) from your sins.	
	<i>For all have sinned and fall short of the glory of God. (Romans 3:23)</i>
	<i>Repent, then, and turn to God, so that your sins may be wiped out, that times of refreshing may come from the Lord. (Acts 3:19)</i>
Believe that Jesus died for your sins and that God raised Him from the dead.	
	<i>That if you confess with your mouth, "Jesus is Lord," and believe in your heart that God raised him from the dead, you will be saved. (Romans 10:9)</i>
Pray and ask Jesus to come into your heart and control your life.	
	Yet to all who received him, to those who believed in his name, he gave the right to become children of God—children born not of natural descent, nor of human decision or a husband's will, but born of God. (John 1:12-13)
	<i>For, "Everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved." (Romans 10:13)</i>
Sample prayer:	
I know I am a sinner and that I need your forgiveness. I believe that you died for my sins. I want to turn from my sins. I invite you to come into my heart and life. I want to trust and follow you as my Lord and Savior. I ask this in Jesus' name. Amen	

For the wages of sin is death, but the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord. (Romans 6:23)



2. How to look up a verse

The Bible is divided into two sections: the Old Testament and the New Testament. Bible text in each section is organized as follows:

- Books
- Chapters within the book
- Verses within the chapter

There is a consistent way of referring to a particular part of the Bible. This is called a Scripture reference. Scripture references are written in the following order: the name of the book, the chapter number, a separator (a colon) “:” and then the verse(s). An example of the Scripture reference Genesis 5:8-10 is shown.

Book	Chapter	Separator	Verse(s)
Genesis	5	:	8-10

A Scripture reference can be written in various ways. The following table shows you different ways you might see it written. Remember, the basic order is the same as shown previously.

Reference	Book	Chapter	Verse(s)
Genesis 3:15	Genesis	3	15
Psalms 98:2-6	Psalms	98	2 through 6
Isaiah 10:4, 8	Isaiah	10	4 and 8
Joel 1:1, 5:1	Two references from the same book. To save space, the name of the book is not written both times.		

Occasionally, a section of Scripture may be written out with a verse (or several verses) omitted. In this case, the place where the skipped verses would be is noted with “...”. An example is 2 Timothy 2:1, 7 where verses 2-6 are not written out in the text provided and are noted with “...”.

*You then, my son, be strong in the grace that is in Christ Jesus
... Reflect on what I am saying, for the Lord will give you insight
into all this. (2 Timothy 2, 7)*

3. How the Bible books are abbreviated in this manual

Throughout this book, some Bible references may be shortened (abbreviated). The following table shows the abbreviations used for each Bible book.

Bible book names and abbreviations					
Book	Abb	Book	Abb	Book	Abb
Genesis	Gen	Isaiah	Isa	Romans	Rom
Exodus	Ex	Jeremiah	Jer	1 Corinthians	1 Cor
Leviticus	Lev	Lamentations	La	2 Corinthians	2 Cor
Numbers	Num	Ezekiel	Eze	Galatians	Gal
Deuteronomy	Deut	Daniel	Dan	Ephesians	Eph
Joshua	Jos	Hosea	Hos	Philippians	Php
Judges	Jdg	Joel	Joel	Colossians	Col
Ruth	Ru	Amos	Am	1 Thessalonians	1 Thes
1 Samuel	1 Sa	Obadiah	Ob	2 Thessalonians	2 Thes
2 Samuel	2 Sa	Jonah	Jnh	1 Timothy	1 Tim
1 Kings	1 Ki	Micah	Mic	2 Timothy	2 Tim
2 Kings	2 Ki	Nahum	Na	Titus	Tit
1 Chronicles	1 Ch	Habakkuk	Hab	Philemon	Phm
2 Chronicles	2 Ch	Zephaniah	Zep	Hebrews	Heb
Ezra	Ez	Haggai	Hag	James	Jas
Nehemiah	Neh	Zechariah	Zec	1 Peter	1 Pet
Esther	Est	Malachi	Mal	2 Peter	2 Pet
Job	Job	Matthew	Matt	1 John	1 Jn
Psalms	Ps	Mark	Mk	2 John	2 Jn
Proverbs	Pr	Luke	Lk	3 John	3 Jn
Ecclesiastes	Ecc	John	Jn	Jude	Jude
Song of Songs	SS	Acts	Ac	Revelation	Rev

4. How to choose a Bible

In some languages, there are many translations of the Bible. In others, however, there may be only one translation of the Bible. Others may have only part of the Bible in their language. Research what is available in your language. **Note:** The examples given in this section relate to Bibles in the English language.

A. Bible translation

A Bible translation is a text that is changed from one language to another by a team of scholars. Every translation has a specific name. For example, the New International Version (NIV) of the Bible is a translation completed by people working for the International Bible Society and was published by Zondervan. Other translations include:

- King James Version
- New King James Version
- New American Standard Bible
- New International Version

When doing discovery Bible study, a student should use a respected translation, not a paraphrase. However, a paraphrase is useful to get additional insight into the meaning of the text. Consult as many Bible translations or paraphrases as possible.

B. Different kinds of translations

Each Bible translation is prepared in accordance with specific standards relating to the interpretation of the original language words. A Bible translation fits the standard of one of these methods:

- Literal method
- Dynamic equivalent method

The following table explains each these methods and identifies some English Bibles translated in accordance with its standards.

Table A2.1 Bible translations	
Translation method	Examples
Literal method – The literal method keeps as close as possible to the exact words and phrasing in the original language. Literal Bible translations are the best kind for Bible study.	
	<i>King James Version (KJV)</i> , public domain, 1611.
	<i>New King James Version (NKJV)</i> , (Thomas Nelson Publishers), 1982.
	<i>New American Standard Bible (NASB)</i> , Lockman Foundation, (A. J. Holman Company), 1996.
	<i>English Standard Version (ESV)</i> , (Good News Publishers/American Bible Society), 2001.
Dynamic equivalent method – This method translates words, grammatical construction and idioms into accurate equivalents, updating the language, grammar and style. They are best suited for general reading and devotional study.	
	<i>New International Version (NIV)</i> , (Zondervan/International Bible Society), 1984.
	<i>New Living Translation (NLT)</i> , (Tyndale House Publishers), 1996.
	<i>Contemporary English Version (CEV)</i> , (Good News Publishers/American Bible Society), 1995.

C. Paraphrases

Another kind of Bible is a paraphrase, sometimes called a “free translation.” This method rephrases ideas from one language to another with limited concern for the exact words of the original text. Often, paraphrases are rephrased several times in an effort to stay updated with the form of current day language. They are easy for people to read and understand. However, they are not the best resource for discovery Bible study as they do not translate directly back to the original language words. Use these Bibles as additional resources only. Examples of a paraphrase are:

- *The Message (MSG)* – Eugene H. Peterson, (NavPress), 2002.
- *The New Testament in Modern English*, J. B. Phillips, (Touchstone), 1995.
- *The Living Bible*, Kenneth Nathaniel Taylor, (Tyndale House), 1967.

D. Types of Bibles

The following text identifies various types of Bibles that can be used.

1) Parallel Bibles (more than one Bible version is presented side by side)

- *Today's Parallel Bible* (NIV, NASB, KJV, NLT), (Zondervan), 2000.
- *The Layman's Parallel New Testament* (KJV, Amplified New Testament, Living New Testament, The Revised Standard Version), (Zondervan), 1970.

2) Study Bibles (contain helps, notes, concordances, etc.)

- *NIV Ryrie Study Bible, Expanded Edition*, (Moody Press), 1994.
- *Life Application Study Bible: NIV*, (Tyndale House Publications), 1997.
- *The Thompson Chain-Reference Bible, NIV*, Frank Charles Thompson, (B. B. Kirkbride Bible Co., Inc., and Zondervan Bible Publishers), 1983.
- *The Hebrew-Greek Key Study Bible, KJV*, Spiros Zodhiates & AMG International, Inc., (Baker Book House), 1984.

3) Audio Bibles (spoken out loud)

- *NAS Complete Bible – Audio Bible* (Cassettes), (Christian Duplications, International), 1994.
- *NIV Complete Bible (CD-ROM)*, (Zondervan Corporation), 2001.

4) Computer Bibles

- PC Study Bible, Biblesoft, Inc. (Software)
- QuickVerse (Software)
- Internet Bible text and study aides

5. How to read through the Bible in one year

As you complete the daily Bible reading, check it off in the ✓ column.

January			February		
✓	Day	Book and Chapter	✓	Day	Book and Chapter
	1	Genesis 1 - 3		1	Exodus 38 - 40
	2	Genesis 4 - 6		2	Leviticus 1 - 3
	3	Genesis 7 - 10		3	Leviticus 4 - 6
	4	Genesis 11 - 13		4	Leviticus 7 - 9
	5	Genesis 14 - 17		5	Leviticus 10 - 12
	6	Genesis 18 - 20		6	Leviticus 13 - 14
	7	Genesis 21 - 23		7	Leviticus 15 - 16
	8	Genesis 24 - 25		8	Leviticus 17 - 19
	9	Genesis 26 - 27		9	Leviticus 20 - 22
	10	Genesis 28 - 29		10	Leviticus 23 - 24
	11	Genesis 30 - 31		11	Leviticus 25 - 27
	12	Genesis 32 - 34		12	Numbers 1 - 3
	13	Genesis 35 - 37		13	Numbers 4 - 6
	14	Genesis 38 - 40		14	Numbers 7 - 9
	15	Genesis 41 - 42		15	Numbers 10 - 12
	16	Genesis 43 - 44		16	Numbers 13 - 15
	17	Genesis 45 - 47		17	Numbers 16 - 18
	18	Genesis 48 - 50		18	Numbers 19 - 20
	19	Exodus 1 - 3		19	Numbers 21 - 22
	20	Exodus 4 - 6		20	Numbers 23 - 25
	21	Exodus 7 - 9		21	Numbers 26 - 27
	22	Exodus 10 - 12		22	Numbers 28 - 30
	23	Exodus 13 - 15		23	Numbers 31 - 32
	24	Exodus 16 - 18		24	Numbers 33 - 34
	25	Exodus 19 - 21		25	Numbers 35 - 36
	26	Exodus 22 - 24		26	Deuteronomy 1 - 3
	27	Exodus 25 - 27		27	Deuteronomy 4 - 6
	28	Exodus 28 - 29		28	Deuteronomy 7 - 9
	29	Exodus 30 - 32			
	30	Exodus 33 - 35			
	31	Exodus 36 - 37			

March			April		
✓	Day	Book and Chapter	✓	Day	Book and Chapter
	1	Deuteronomy 10 - 12		1	1 Samuel 23 - 25
	2	Deuteronomy 13 - 16		2	1 Samuel 26 - 29
	3	Deuteronomy 17 - 20		3	1 Samuel 30 - 31 2 Samuel 1 - 2
	4	Deuteronomy 21 - 23		4	2 Samuel 3 - 5
	5	Deuteronomy 24 - 27		5	2 Samuel 6 - 9
	6	Deuteronomy 28 - 29		6	2 Samuel 10 - 12
	7	Deuteronomy 30 - 31		7	2 Samuel 13 - 15
	8	Deuteronomy 32 - 34		8	2 Samuel 16 - 18
	9	Joshua 1 - 5		9	2 Samuel 19 - 21
	10	Joshua 6 - 8		10	2 Samuel 22 - 24
	11	Joshua 9 - 11		11	1 Kings 1 - 3
	12	Joshua 12 - 14		12	1 Kings 4 - 6
	13	Joshua 15 - 17		13	1 Kings 7 - 9
	14	Joshua 18 - 19		14	1 Kings 10 - 12
	15	Joshua 20 - 22		15	1 Kings 13 - 15
	16	Joshua 23 - 24		16	1 Kings 16 - 18
	17	Judges 1 - 4		17	1 Kings 19 - 22
	18	Judges 5 - 7		18	2 Kings 1 - 3
	19	Judges 8 - 9		19	2 Kings 4 - 6
	20	Judges 10 - 12		20	2 Kings 7 - 9
	21	Judges 13 - 16		21	2 Kings 10 - 12
	22	Judges 17 - 19		22	2 Kings 13 - 15
	23	Judges 20 - 21		23	2 Kings 16 - 18
	24	Ruth 1 - 4		24	2 Kings 19 - 21
	25	1 Samuel 1 - 4		25	2 Kings 22 - 25
	26	1 Samuel 5 - 8		26	1 Chronicles 1 - 3
	27	1 Samuel 9 - 12		27	1 Chronicles 4 - 6
	28	1 Samuel 13 - 14		28	1 Chronicles 7 - 9
	29	1 Samuel 15 - 17		29	1 Chronicles 10 - 12
	30	1 Samuel 18 - 19		30	1 Chronicles 13 - 15
	31	1 Samuel 20 - 22			

May			June		
✓	Day	Book and Chapter	✓	Day	Book and Chapter
	1	1 Chronicles 16 - 18		1	Job 21 - 23
	2	1 Chronicles 19 - 21		2	Job 24 - 27
	3	1 Chronicles 22 - 24		3	Job 28 - 30
	4	1 Chronicles 25 - 27		4	Job 31 - 33
	5	1 Chronicles 28 - 29		5	Job 34 - 36
	6	2 Chronicles 1 - 3		6	Job 37 - 39
	7	2 Chronicles 4 - 6		7	Job 40 - 42
	8	2 Chronicles 7 - 9		8	Psalms 1 - 5
	9	2 Chronicles 10 - 13		9	Psalms 6 - 10
	10	2 Chronicles 14 - 17		10	Psalms 11 - 15
	11	2 Chronicles 18 - 21		11	Psalms 16 - 20
	12	2 Chronicles 22 - 25		12	Psalms 21 - 25
	13	2 Chronicles 26 - 29		13	Psalms 26 - 30
	14	2 Chronicles 30 - 32		14	Psalms 31 - 35
	15	2 Chronicles 33 - 36		15	Psalms 36 - 40
	16	Ezra 1 - 3		16	Psalms 41 - 45
	17	Ezra 4 - 6		17	Psalms 46 - 50
	18	Ezra 7 - 10		18	Psalms 51 - 55
	19	Nehemiah 1 - 3		19	Psalms 56 - 60
	20	Nehemiah 4 - 6		20	Psalms 61 - 65
	21	Nehemiah 7 - 9		21	Psalms 66 - 70
	22	Nehemiah 10 - 13		22	Psalms 71 - 75
	23	Esther 1 - 3		23	Psalms 76 - 80
	24	Esther 4 - 6		24	Psalms 81 - 85
	25	Esther 7 - 10		25	Psalms 86 - 90
	26	Job 1 - 3		26	Psalms 91 - 95
	27	Job 4 - 6		27	Psalms 96 - 100
	28	Job 7 - 9		28	Psalms 101 - 105
	29	Job 10 - 13		29	Psalms 106 - 110
	30	Job 14 - 16		30	Psalms 111 - 115
	31	Job 17 - 20			

July			August		
✓	Day	Book and Chapter	✓	Day	Book and Chapter
	1	Psalms 116 - 118		1	Isaiah 33 - 36
	2	Psalms 119		2	Isaiah 37 - 40
	3	Psalms 120 - 125		3	Isaiah 41 - 43
	4	Psalms 126 - 130		4	Isaiah 44 - 47
	5	Psalms 131 - 135		5	Isaiah 48 - 52
	6	Psalms 136 - 140		6	Isaiah 53 - 57
	7	Psalms 141 - 145		7	Isaiah 58 - 62
	8	Psalms 146 - 150		8	Isaiah 63 - 66
	9	Proverbs 1 - 3		9	Jeremiah 1 - 3
	10	Proverbs 4 - 6		10	Jeremiah 4 - 6
	11	Proverbs 7 - 9		11	Jeremiah 7 - 10
	12	Proverbs 10 - 12		12	Jeremiah 11 - 13
	13	Proverbs 13 - 15		13	Jeremiah 14 - 17
	14	Proverbs 16 - 18		14	Jeremiah 18 - 22
	15	Proverbs 19 - 21		15	Jeremiah 23 - 25
	16	Proverbs 22 - 23		16	Jeremiah 26 - 28
	17	Proverbs 24 - 26		17	Jeremiah 29 - 31
	18	Proverbs 27 - 29		18	Jeremiah 32 - 33
	19	Proverbs 30 - 31		19	Jeremiah 34 - 37
	20	Ecclesiastes 1 - 3		20	Jeremiah 38 - 41
	21	Ecclesiastes 4 - 6		21	Jeremiah 42 - 46
	22	Ecclesiastes 7 - 9		22	Jeremiah 47 - 49
	23	Ecclesiastes 10 - 12		23	Jeremiah 50 - 52
	24	Song of Solomon 1 - 4		24	Lamentations 1 - 3
	25	Song of Solomon 5 - 8		25	Lamentations 4 - 5
	26	Isaiah 1 - 6		26	Ezekiel 1 - 3
	27	Isaiah 7 - 12		27	Ezekiel 4 - 6
	28	Isaiah 13 - 18		28	Ezekiel 7 - 10
	29	Isaiah 19 - 24		29	Ezekiel 11 - 14
	30	Isaiah 25 - 28		30	Ezekiel 15 - 16
	31	Isaiah 29 - 32		31	Ezekiel 17 - 19

September			October		
✓	Day	Book and Chapter	✓	Day	Book and Chapter
	1	Ezekiel 20 - 22		1	Matthew 11 - 12
	2	Ezekiel 23 - 25		2	Matthew 13 - 14
	3	Ezekiel 26 - 28		3	Matthew 15 - 17
	4	Ezekiel 29 - 31		4	Matthew 18 - 19
	5	Ezekiel 32 - 34		5	Matthew 20 - 21
	6	Ezekiel 35 - 37		6	Matthew 22 - 23
	7	Ezekiel 38 - 40		7	Matthew 24 - 25
	8	Ezekiel 41 - 43		8	Matthew 26
	9	Ezekiel 44 - 46		9	Matthew 27 - 28
	10	Ezekiel 47 - 48		10	Mark 1 - 3
	11	Daniel 1 - 3		11	Mark 4 - 5
	12	Daniel 4 - 6		12	Mark 6 - 7
	13	Daniel 7 - 9		13	Mark 8 - 9
	14	Daniel 10 - 12		14	Mark 10
	15	Hosea 1 - 5		15	Mark 11 - 13
	16	Hosea 6 - 10		16	Mark 14
	17	Hosea 11 - 14 Joel 1 - 3		17	Mark 15 - 16
	18	Amos 1 - 5		18	Luke 1
	19	Amos 6 - 9 Obadiah 1		19	Luke 2 - 3
	20	Jonah 1 - 4 Micah 1 - 3		20	Luke 4 - 5
	21	Micah 4 - 7		21	Luke 6 - 7
	22	Nahum 1 - 3 Habakkuk 1 - 3		22	Luke 8 - 9
	23	Zephaniah 1 - 3 Haggai 1 - 2		23	Luke 10 - 11
	24	Zechariah 1 - 6		24	Luke 12 - 13
	25	Zechariah 7 - 11		25	Luke 14 - 15
	26	Zechariah 12 - 14		26	Luke 16 - 17
	27	Malachi 1 - 4		27	Luke 18 - 19
	28	Matthew 1 - 3		28	Luke 20 - 21
	29	Matthew 4 - 6		29	Luke 22 - 23
	30	Matthew 7 - 10		30	Luke 24
				31	John 1

November			December		
✓	Day	Book and Chapter	✓	Day	Book and Chapter
	1	John 2 - 4		1	1 Corinthians 15 - 16
	2	John 5 - 6		2	2 Corinthians 1 - 5
	3	John 7 - 8		3	2 Corinthians 6 - 10
	4	John 9 - 10		4	2 Corinthians 11 - 13
	5	John 11 - 12		5	Galatians 1 - 4
	6	John 13 - 14		6	Galatians 5 - 6
	7	John 15 - 17		7	Ephesians 1 - 3
	8	John 18 - 19		8	Ephesians 4 - 6
	9	John 20 - 21		9	Philippians 1 - 4
	10	Acts 1 - 3		10	Colossians 1 - 4
	11	Acts 4 - 6		11	1 Thessalonians 1 - 5
	12	Acts 7 - 8		12	2 Thessalonians 1 - 3
	13	Acts 9 - 10		13	1 Timothy 1 - 3
	14	Acts 11 - 12		14	1 Timothy 4 - 6
	15	Acts 13 - 14		15	2 Timothy 1 - 4
	16	Acts 15 - 17		16	Titus 1 - 3 Philemon 1 Hebrews 1 - 3
	17	Acts 18 - 20		17	Hebrews 4 - 7
	18	Acts 21 - 23		18	Hebrews 8 - 10
	19	Acts 24 - 25		19	Hebrews 11 - 13
	20	Acts 26 - 28		20	James 1 - 5
	21	Romans 1 - 3		21	1 Peter 1 - 5
	22	Romans 4 - 6		22	2 Peter 1 - 3
	23	Romans 7 - 9		23	1 John 1 - 5
	24	Romans 10 - 12		24	2 John 1 3 John 1 Jude 1
	25	Romans 13 - 16		25	Revelation 1 - 3
	26	1 Corinthians 1 - 3		26	Revelation 4 - 6
	27	1 Corinthians 4 - 6		27	Revelation 7 - 9
	28	1 Corinthians 7 - 9		28	Revelation 10 - 12
	29	1 Corinthians 10 - 11		29	Revelation 14 - 16
	30	1 Corinthians 12 - 14		30	Revelation 17 - 20
				31	Revelation 21 - 22

6. How to chart the topics of a Bible book

The chart on the following page is a graphical analysis of 2 Timothy created by Irving Jensen. A close look at this chart shows five ways he analyzed 2 Timothy.

1. **Analysis of time** – past, present and future
 - Past – 1 Timothy 1:3-18 talks about the past.
 - Present – Chapter 2 talks about the present.
 - Future – Chapters 3 and 4 talk about the future.
2. **Messages to Timothy:**
 - Thanksgiving
 - Exhortations
 - Warnings
 - A final charge
 - Personal instructions
3. **Analysis of Christian servanthood**

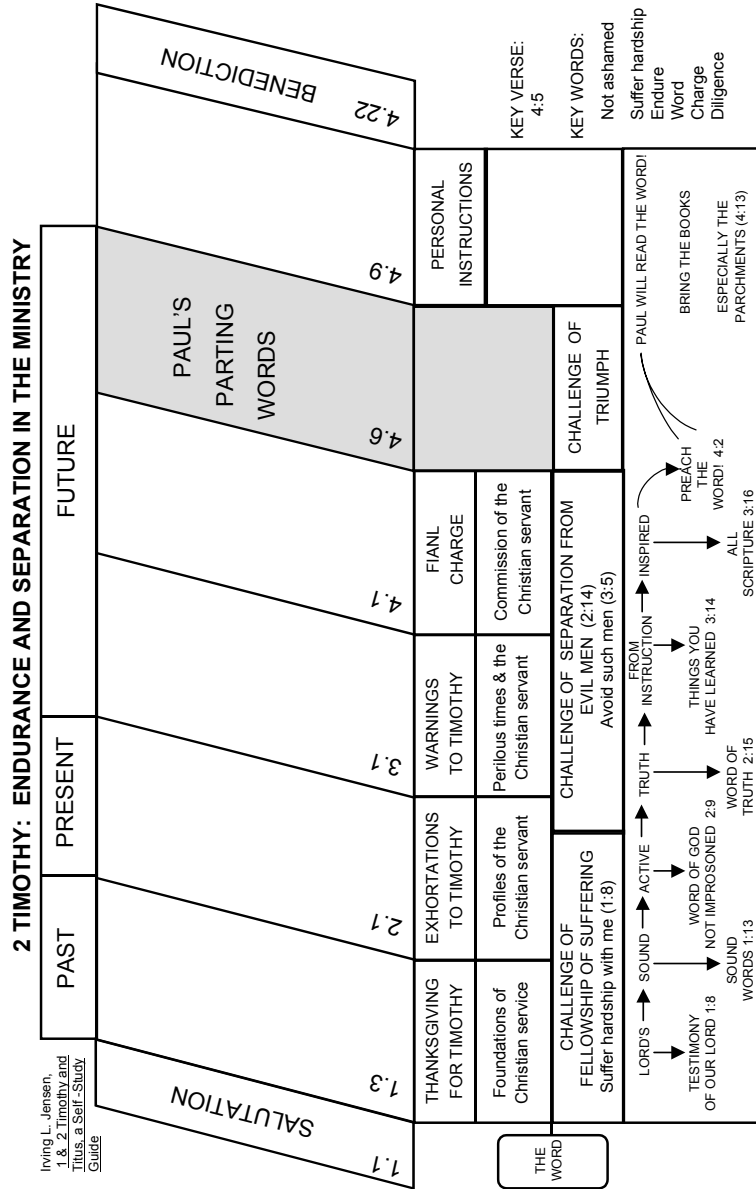
The next row of boxes tells about Christian service and teaches Timothy about being a servant of Christ.
4. **Challenges of the Christian life**

There are 3 challenges given to Timothy:

 - Challenge of fellowship of suffering (1:8)
 - Challenge of separation from evil men (2:14)
 - Challenge of triumph
5. **The importance of the Word of God** as seen in this letter
The last row of boxes shows the importance of God's Word.

¹ Irving L. Jensen, 1 & 2 Timothy and Titus, a Self-Study Guide, (The Moody Bible Institute of Chicago, 1987), page 75

Diagram A2.1 Graphical chart showing the parts of 2 Timothy



7. How to use various concordances

A. Types of concordances

There are various kinds of concordances. The primary differences relate to how many Bible words they contain and whether other aids to Bible study are included. Because a concordance deals with word usage, each Bible translation is most reliable to its corresponding concordance. Some common types of concordances follow.

1) A concordance included in a Bible

Some Bibles include short concordances, usually found in the back section. In these cases, only some important words are listed. This prevents the book from becoming physically too large and too heavy to carry easily.

2) A complete concordance

A complete concordance contains all Scripture references associated with a given word. However, it does not contain every word used in the Bible. Some minor or insignificant words (such as “and” or “of”) are not included. An example of a complete concordance is *The Complete English Concordance to the New International Version* by Edward W. Goodrich and John R Kohlenberger III.¹

3) An exhaustive concordance

This type of concordance lists every word in the Bible.

4) Bible computer software containing a concordance

Computers have proven to be helpful to the Bible student, especially if good Bible software programs are available. These programs may contain many helpful aids like concordances, dictionaries and commentaries. The authors of this manual used such a Bible program. Aids like this can save time but are not necessary for effective study.

5) A concordance that includes Greek and Hebrew dictionaries

Some concordances provide information about the original Hebrew, Chaldee (Aramaic) and Greek words of the Bible. Each word found in a translation comes from a word (or words) in the original language. Definitions for these words are found in dictionaries that are included in this type of concordance. One such concordance/dictionary is the *New American Standard Exhaustive Concordance of the Bible, Hebrew-Aramaic and Greek Dictionaries*.² It uses English words from the *New American Standard* translation of the Bible.

One of the best known exhaustive concordances in English is *Strong's Exhaustive Concordance, Complete and Unabridged*³ which uses words found in the *King James Version* of the Bible. Each word in this concordance is assigned a number that references a Hebrew, Chaldee (Aramaic) or Greek word. This concordance is really three Bible aids in one. To illustrate how this concordance is used, the word "false" is researched through all three sections.

a. Main Concordance

The Main Concordance contains an alphabetic list of words in the Bible. Like other concordances, after each word is a list of Scripture references that point to each place that word appears. Along with each reference is a number. These numbers refer to the original Hebrew, Chaldee (Aramaic) or Greek word that has been translated. Diagram A2.2 shows a small portion of a concordance list for the word "false."

Diagram A2.2 Example of concordance for the word "false"

Old Testament			
Ex	20:16	Thou shalt not bear <u>false</u> witness	8267
Eze	21:23	as a <u>false</u> divination in their sight	7723
New Testament			
2 Cor	11:13	For such are the <u>false</u> apostles, deceitful	5570
Gal	2:4	because of <u>false</u> brethren unawares	5569
2 Tim	3:3	trucebreakers, <u>false</u> accusers	1128

Adapted from: *Strong's Exhaustive Concordance, Complete and Unabridged*³

b. Hebrew and Chaldee (Aramaic) Dictionary

The Hebrew and Chaldee (Aramaic) Dictionary contains the Hebrew and Chaldee words found in the Old Testament. Numbers from the concordance references are listed in numeric order. The word and its definition come after the number.

Diagram A2.3 Example of Hebrew/Chaldee (Aramaic) Dictionary

8267 sheqer (sheh'-ker); from OT:8266; an untruth; by implication, a sham (often adverbial): without a cause, deceit (-ful), false (-hood, -ly), feignedly, liar, lie, lying, vain (thing), wrongfully.

7723 shav' (shawv); or shav (shav); from the same as OT:7722 in the sense of desolating; evil (as destructive), literally (ruin) or morally (especially guile); figuratively idolatry (as false, subjective), uselessness (as deceptive, objective; also adverbially, in vain).

Adapted from: *Strong's Exhaustive Concordance, Complete and Unabridged*³

C. The Greek Dictionary

The Greek Dictionary contains the Greek words found in the New Testament. It is ordered in the same way as the Hebrew and Chaldee dictionary.

Diagram A2.4 Example of Greek Dictionary

5570 pseudapostolos (psyoo-dap-os'-tol-os); from NT:5571 and

5569 pseudadelphos (psyoo-dad'-el-fos); from NT:5571 and NT:80; a spurious brother, i.e. pretended associate: KJV - false brethren.

1128 diabolos (dee-ab'-ol-os); from NT:1225; a traducer; specially, Satan [compare OT:7854]: KJV - false accuser, devil, slanderer.

Adapted from: *Strong's Exhaustive Concordance, Complete and Unabridged*³

Note: The first two definitions in Diagram A2.4 contain the word "spurious." Spurious means "outwardly similar but not having genuine qualities."

To understand how the word “false” is used in the Bible, a student would first look it up in the Main Concordance (refer again to Diagram A2.2). Notice that translators have used the word “false” to represent one of several unique words in the original languages. Each of these words can be researched by referring to their numbers in the dictionaries. Diagrams A2.3 and A2.4 show small portions of both dictionaries where definitions are found for the various words translated as “false.” Diagram A2.3 shows part of the Hebrew/Chaldee (Aramaic) Dictionary and Diagram A2.4 shows part of the Greek dictionary.

Translations are usually very accurate, but do not always capture the full intent of Scripture writers. Using a concordance as a tool, a student can now compare the meanings of original Bible words. In this case, a student sees what the word “false” means in the original language. A concordance can be a great benefit when doing an in-depth word study.

1 *The Complete English Concordance to the New International Version*, Edward W. Goodrich & John R. Kohlenberger III (Regency Reference Library, Zondervan Publishing House, Grand Rapids, Michigan), Copyright © 1981 by Zondervan Corporation.

2 *New American Standard Exhaustive Concordance of the Bible, Hebrew-Aramaic and Greek Dictionaries*.²

3 *Strong's Exhaustive Concordance, Complete and Unabridged*, (Word Books, Waco, Texas, 1977)

Appendix 3

Bible Text Worksheet

2 Timothy 1-3

Bible Text Worksheet

2 Timothy, Chapters 1-4

2 Timothy 1

¹Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus by the will of God, according to the promise of life that is in Christ Jesus, ²To Timothy, my dear son: Grace, mercy and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord.

³I thank God, whom I serve, as my forefathers did, with a clear conscience, as night and day I constantly remember you in my prayers.

⁴Recalling your tears, I long to see you, so that I may be filled with joy. ⁵I have been reminded of your sincere faith, which first lived in your grandmother Lois and in your mother Eunice and, I am persuaded, now lives in you also. ⁶For this reason I remind you to fan into flame the gift of God, which is in you through the laying on of my hands. ⁷For God did not give us a spirit of timidity, but a spirit of power, of love and of self-discipline.

⁸So do not be ashamed to testify about our Lord, or ashamed of me his prisoner. But join with me in suffering for the gospel, by the power of God, ⁹who has saved us and called us to a holy life—not because of anything

we have done but because of his own purpose and grace. This grace was given us in Christ Jesus before the beginning of time,¹⁰ but it has now been revealed through the appearing of our Savior, Christ Jesus, who has destroyed death and has brought life and immortality to light through the gospel.¹¹ And of this gospel I was appointed a herald and an apostle and a teacher.¹² That is why I am suffering as I am. Yet I am not ashamed, because I know whom I have believed, and am convinced that he is able to guard what I have entrusted to him for that day.

¹³What you heard from me, keep as the pattern of sound teaching, with faith and love in Christ Jesus.¹⁴ Guard the good deposit that was entrusted to you—guard it with the help of the Holy Spirit who lives in us.¹⁵ You know that everyone in the province of Asia has deserted me, including Phygelus and Hermogenes.

¹⁶May the Lord show mercy to the household of Onesiphorus, because he often refreshed me and was not ashamed of my chains.¹⁷ On the contrary, when he was in Rome, he searched hard for me until he found me.¹⁸ May the Lord grant that he will find mercy from the Lord on that day! You know very well in how many ways he helped me in Ephesus.

2 Timothy 2

¹You then, my son, be strong in the grace that is in Christ Jesus. ²And the things you have heard me say in the presence of many witnesses entrust to reliable men who will also be qualified to teach others. ³Endure hardship with us like a good soldier of Christ Jesus. ⁴No one serving as a soldier gets involved in civilian affairs—he wants to please his commanding officer. ⁵Similarly, if anyone competes as an athlete, he does not receive the victor’s crown unless he competes according to the rules. ⁶The hardworking farmer should be the first to receive a share of the crops. ⁷Reflect on what I am saying, for the Lord will give you insight into all this.

⁸Remember Jesus Christ, raised from the dead, descended from David. This is my gospel, ⁹for which I am suffering even to the point of being chained like a criminal. But God’s word is not chained. ¹⁰Therefore I endure everything for the sake of the elect, that they too may obtain the salvation that is in Christ Jesus, with eternal glory. ¹¹Here is a trustworthy saying:

If we died with him,
we will also live with him;
¹²if we endure,
we will also reign with him.

If we disown him,
he will also disown us;
¹³if we are faithless,
he will remain faithful,
for he cannot disown himself.

¹⁴Keep reminding them of these things. Warn them before God against quarreling about words; it is of no value, and only ruins those who listen.

¹⁵Do your best to present yourself to God as one approved, a workman who does not need to be ashamed and who correctly handles the word of truth. ¹⁶Avoid godless chatter, because those who indulge in it will become more and more ungodly. ¹⁷Their teaching will spread like gangrene. Among them are Hymenaeus and Philetus, ¹⁸who have wandered away from the truth. They say that the resurrection has already taken place, and they destroy the faith of some. ¹⁹Nevertheless, God's solid foundation stands firm, sealed with this inscription: "The Lord knows those who are his," and, "Everyone who confesses the name of the Lord must turn away from wickedness."

²⁰In a large house there are articles not only of gold and silver, but also of wood and clay; some are for noble purposes and some for ignoble. ²¹If a man cleanses himself from the latter, he will be an instrument for noble

purposes, made holy, useful to the Master and prepared to do any good work.

²²Flee the evil desires of youth, and pursue righteousness, faith, love and peace, along with those who call on the Lord out of a pure heart. ²³Don't have anything to do with foolish and stupid arguments, because you know they produce quarrels. ²⁴And the Lord's servant must not quarrel; instead, he must be kind to everyone, able to teach, not resentful.

²⁵Those who oppose him he must gently instruct, in the hope that God will grant them repentance leading them to a knowledge of the truth,

²⁶and that they will come to their senses and escape from the trap of the devil, who has taken them captive to do his will.

2 Timothy 3

¹But mark this: There will be terrible times in the last days. ²People will be lovers of themselves, lovers of money, boastful, proud, abusive, disobedient to their parents, ungrateful, unholy, ³without love, unforgiving, slanderous, without self-control, brutal, not lovers of the good, ⁴treacherous, rash, conceited, lovers of pleasure rather than lovers of God—⁵having a form of godliness but denying its power. Have nothing to do with them.

⁶They are the kind who worm their way into homes and gain control over weak-willed women, who are loaded down with sins and are swayed by all kinds of evil desires, ⁷always learning but never able to acknowledge the truth. ⁸Just as Jannes and Jambres opposed Moses, so also these men oppose the truth—men of depraved minds, who, as far as the faith is concerned, are rejected. ⁹But they will not get very far because, as in the case of those men, their folly will be clear to everyone.

¹⁰You, however, know all about my teaching, my way of life, my purpose, faith, patience, love, endurance, ¹¹persecutions, sufferings—what kinds of things happened to me in Antioch, Iconium and Lystra, the persecutions I endured. Yet the Lord rescued me from all of them. ¹²In fact, everyone who wants to live a godly life in Christ Jesus will be persecuted, ¹³while evil men and impostors will go from bad to worse, deceiving and being deceived. ¹⁴But as for you, continue in what you have learned and have become convinced of, because you know those from whom you learned it, ¹⁵and how from infancy you have known the holy Scriptures, which are able to make you wise for salvation through faith in Christ Jesus. ¹⁶All Scripture is God-breathed and is useful for teaching, rebuking, correcting and training in righteousness, ¹⁷so that the man of God may be thoroughly equipped for every good work.

Appendix 4

Answer Key for Selected Activities

**Lesson 2: Book Summary Worksheet
2 Timothy**

**Lesson 3: Paragraph Analysis
Worksheet 2 Timothy**

**Lesson 3-4: Bible Text Worksheet
2 Timothy, Chapters 1-2**

**Lesson 4: Simple and Topical Lists
2 Timothy, Chapters 1-2**

**Lesson 6: Figurative Language Found
in 2 Timothy**

Lesson 2 – Book Summary Worksheet

Book: 2 Timothy

1. **What kind of literature is it?**
Letter (1:1-2)
2. **Who is the author?**
Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus (1:1)
3. **Who is the intended audience?**
Timothy, Paul's son in the faith (1:2)
4. **What is the historical, geographical, cultural or religious setting?**
Historical & geographical: Chains (1:16, 2:9), Parchments (4:13), Province – Asia (1:15), Rome (1:17), Antioch, Iconium/Lystra (3:11), Ephesus (4:12, 4:13, 4:20)
Religious & cultural: forefathers (1:3), descendant of David (2:8), Moses (3:8), holy Scriptures (3:15), drink offering (4:6)
5. **Where does this book take place?**
Paul was the "Lord's prisoner," suffering in prison (1:8-9) in Rome (1:17)
6. **When did it take place?**
End of Paul's ministry (4:6-7, 18)
7. **What are the main events?**
(Not applicable to this book)
8. **Who are the main (primary) characters?**
Major characters: Paul and Timothy
Minor characters: Onesiphorus & Alexander, the metal worker
9. **What are the important repeated words and phrases?**
God, Jesus Christ, Timothy, Paul, Scripture (Word & synonyms 1:13, 2:15, 3:7, 3:15, 3:16, 4:2, 4:3), sound doctrine, suffer/hardship/endure, diligent.
10. **What are the main topics, themes, teachings or problems addressed?**
Instructions and exhortations to Timothy, a young disciple of Jesus, whom Paul is mentoring, importance of the Word of God, how to deal with suffering and hardship (1:8, 1:12, 1:15-16, 2:9-10), exhortation to guard the "good deposit".
11. **Why was the book written? What is the purpose of the book?**
Paul is writing to Timothy (who was like a son) to give last instructions and encouragement as to how to be a faithful and effective follower of Christ. This was Paul's last letter to Timothy to tell him to come and what to bring (4:9, 11, 13, 21)
12. **What is the verse that sums up the main theme of the book?**
2 Timothy 4:5 or 2 Timothy 4:2

Lesson 3 – Paragraph Analysis Worksheet

Text: 2 Timothy, Chapters 1-4

Paragraph Division	Topics	Title
1:1 – 1:2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Paul introduces himself • Addresses Timothy 	Paul, Jesus' apostle, writes a letter to Timothy
1:3 – 1:7	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Paul prays for Timothy • Paul remembers their friendship and family 	Paul remembers, prays and exhorts Timothy
1:8 – 1:12	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Paul suffers in prison • Paul exhorts not to be ashamed • Paul writes about Jesus 	Paul knows and trusts Jesus, the Savior, suffering for Him without shame
1:13 – 1:15	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Keep the pattern for sound teaching • Guard the good deposit • Paul is deserted by men 	Keep and guard the Word you receive with the help of the Holy Spirit
1:16 – 1:18	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Onesiphorus refreshed Paul by finding Paul • Helped Paul in Ephesus 	Paul's friend refreshed, helped and visited him
2:1 – 2:7	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Entrust Word to the faithful • Exhortations: Be strong, endure, play by the rules, work hard, reflect 	Be strong, entrust to the faithful and reflect
2:8 – 2:13	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Gospel defined • God's Word not chained • Salvation is in Jesus • Endure suffering 	Remember Jesus and suffer/endure for the gospel and the elect
2:14 – 2:19	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Exhortations about teaching, quarrelling, God's Word and speech • Example of false teaching but truth wins 	Approved workman who handles well God's Word and is careful in what he speaks

Paragraph Division	Topics	Title
2:20 – 2:21	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Metaphor of precious and common instruments 	Be a noble instrument in the Master's hand
2:22 – 2:26	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Exhortations to a young minister • Don't get caught up in arguments and quarrels • Teach well 	The Lord's servant in right action, attitude, teaching & speaking
3:1 – 3:5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Description of last days • Exhortation to have nothing to do with some people 	Beware of last days and evil people who deny God's power
3:6 – 3:9	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • False teachers go into homes of weak women • Learning but not finding the truth is possible 	Opposition to the truth doesn't get far
3:10 – 3:17	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Godly promised persecution • Continue in what you learned • Be careful from whom you learn 	Continue in God's Word in order to be equipped, even in persecution
4:1 – 4:5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Reasons to preach • How to preach the Word • Good preaching not always received because of false teachers 	Always fulfill your ministry understanding the Judge is present
4:6 – 4:8	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Paul was aware that the end of his life has come • He finished well • Rewards await him 	Paul finishes his earthly work, heavenly rewards await him
4:9 – 4:15	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Paul asks Timothy to visit him • Asks for cloak, scrolls • Reminds Timothy of deserters and opposition 	Paul asks for a visit from Timothy, bring scrolls and coat

Paragraph Division	Topics	Title
4:16 – 4:18	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The Lord stood with and strengthened Paul in court • Paul delivered from lion's mouth • Lord rescued Paul from evil attack 	The Lord protected, strengthened, delivered and rescued Paul
4:19 – 4:22	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Last greetings, information and instructions • Blessings to Timothy 	Paul closes his letter with greetings and blessings of grace

Lessons 3-4 – Bible Text Worksheet

2 Timothy, Chapters 1-2

Note: Some of the important repeated words and phrases, topical lists, simple lists and signpost words are identified in the following text. These are given as examples – they are not meant to be complete. There are many other important repeated words and phrases, ideas and lists that are not shown.

Some important repeated words and phrases (There are others for you to find)

▲	God
†	Jesus
*	Holy Spirit
■	Paul
○	Timothy
□	Ashamed
▣	Suffering, Endure
◎	Guard

Chapter 1

■ † † ▲
1 Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus by the will of God, according to the
‡ ‡ ○ ■ ○
promise of life that is in Christ Jesus, 2 To Timothy, my dear son:
1 2 3 ▲ ▲ † † †
Grace, mercy and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord.
■ ▲ ▲ ■ ■
3 I thank God, whom I serve, as my forefathers did, with a clear
■ ○ ■
conscience, as night and day I constantly remember you in my prayers.
○ ■ ○ ■
4 Recalling your tears, I long to see you, so that I may be filled with joy.
■ ○ ○
5 I have been reminded of your sincere faith, which first lived in your
○ ■
grandmother Lois and in your mother Eunice and, I am persuaded, now

lives in you also. ⁶For this reason I remind you to fan into flame the gift of God, which is in you through the laying on of my hands. ⁷For God did not give us a spirit of timidity, but a spirit of power, of love and of self-discipline.

⁸So do not be ashamed to testify about our Lord, or ashamed of me his prisoner. But join with me in suffering for the gospel, by the power of God, ⁹who has saved us and called us to a holy life—not because of anything we have done but because of his own purpose and grace.

This grace was given us in Christ Jesus before the beginning of time,

¹⁰but it has now been revealed through the appearing of our Savior,

Christ Jesus, who has destroyed death and has brought life and

immortality to light through the gospel. ¹¹And of this gospel I was

appointed a herald and an apostle and a teacher. ¹²That is why I am

suffering as I am. Yet I am not ashamed because I know whom I

have believed, and am convinced that he is able to guard what I have

entrusted to him for that day.

13 What you heard from me, keep as the pattern of sound teaching, with faith and love in Christ Jesus. 14 Guard the good deposit that was entrusted to you— guard it with the help of the Holy Spirit who lives in us. 15 You know that everyone in the province of Asia has deserted me, including Phygelus and Hermogenes.

16 May the Lord show mercy to the household of Onesiphorus, because he often refreshed me and was not ashamed of my chains. 17 On the contrary, when he was in Rome, he searched hard for me until he found me. 18 May the Lord grant that he will find mercy from the Lord on that day! You know very well in how many ways he helped me in Ephesus.

Chapter 2

1 You then, my son, be strong in the grace that is in Christ Jesus. 2 And the things you have heard me say in the presence of many witnesses entrust to reliable men who will also be qualified to teach others. 3 Endure hardship with us like a good soldier of Christ Jesus. 4 No one serving as a soldier gets involved in civilian affairs—he wants to

please his commanding officer. ⁵Similarly, if anyone competes as an
²athlete, he does not receive the victor's crown unless he competes
according to the rules. ⁶The hardworking farmer should be the first to
receive a share of the crops. ⁷Reflect on what I am saying, for the Lord
will give you insight into all this.

⁸Remember Jesus Christ, raised from the dead, descended from David.
This is my gospel, ⁹for which I am suffering even to the point of being
chained like a criminal. But God's word is not chained. ¹⁰Therefore I
endure everything for the sake of the elect, [so] that they too may obtain
the salvation that is in Christ Jesus, with eternal glory. ¹¹Here is a
trustworthy saying:

If we died with him,
we will also live with him;
¹²if we endure,
we will also reign with him.
If we disown him,

†
he will also disown us;

¹³if we are faithless,

†
he will remain faithful,

† †
for he cannot disown himself.

¹⁴Keep reminding them of these things. Warn them before God against
quarreling about words; it is of no value, and only ruins those who listen.

¹⁵Do your best to present yourself to God as one approved, a workman
who does not need to be ashamed and who correctly handles the

word of truth. ¹⁶Avoid godless chatter, because those who indulge in it
will become more and more ungodly. ¹⁷Their teaching will spread like

gangrene. Among them are Hymenaeus and Philetus, ¹⁸who have
wandered away from the truth. They say that the resurrection has

already taken place, and they destroy the faith of some. ¹⁹Nevertheless,

†
God's solid foundation stands firm, sealed with this inscription: "The

† †
Lord knows those who are his," and, "Everyone who confesses the

†
name of the Lord must turn away from wickedness."

²⁰In a large house there are articles not only of gold and silver, but also of wood and clay; some are for noble purposes and some for ignoble.

²¹If a man cleanses himself from the latter, he will be an instrument for noble purposes, made holy, useful to the Master and prepared to do any good work.

¹²²Flee the evil desires of youth, and pursue righteousness, faith, love and peace, along with those who call on the Lord out of a pure heart.

³²³Don't have anything to do with foolish and stupid arguments, because you know they produce quarrels. [†]²⁴And the Lord's servant must not quarrel; instead, he must be kind to everyone, able to teach, not resentful. ⁴⁵⁶⁷²⁵Those who oppose him he must gently instruct, in the hope that God will grant them repentance leading them to a knowledge of the truth, ²⁶and that they will come to their senses and escape from the trap of the devil, who has taken them captive to do his will.

Lesson 4 – Simple and topical Lists

Text: 2 Timothy 1-2

The following simple and topical lists are found in the 2 Timothy 1-2 texts and are marked on the previous Bible Text Worksheet.

Simple lists

The following simple lists are marked on the previous Bible Text Worksheet.

- 2:1 God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord gives:
1. Grace
 2. Mercy
 3. Peace
- 1:7 Rather than the spirit of timidity, God gave us a:
1. Spirit of power
 2. Spirit of love
 3. Spirit of self-discipline
- 1:11 Paul was appointed to serve Christ Jesus:
1. As a herald
 2. As an apostle
 3. As a teacher

Topical lists

These topical lists compile the example shown in the lesson, the Class Activity and the Student Activity.

Topical list – God

(God is marked on the Bible Text Worksheet with a ▲.)

- 1:1 God willed Paul to be an apostle.
1:2 Grace, mercy and peace come from God.
1:3 God is thanked.

1:3	God (whom) is served.
1:6	God gives gifts.
1:7	God does not give a spirit of timidity.
1:7	God gives a spirit of power.
1:7	God gives a spirit of love.
1:7	God gives a spirit of self discipline.
1:8	God gives power to suffer for the gospel.
1:9	God saves us.
1:9	God calls us to a holy life.
2:9	God's Word is not captive (chained).
2:14	Believers stand before Him.
2:15	Timothy would be in his presence.
2:19	God's foundation is firm.
2:25	God grants repentance and knowledge of the truth.

Topical list – Jesus

(Jesus is marked on the Bible Text Worksheet with a †.)

1:1	Jesus has an apostle named Paul.
1:1	Jesus gives a promise of life.
1:2	Grace, mercy and peace come from Jesus.
1:2	Jesus Christ is Lord.
1:8	Jesus is Lord.
1:9	Jesus has purpose and grace.
1:9	Jesus gave grace before beginning of time.
1:10	Jesus' appearance revealed grace for believers.
1:10	Jesus destroys death and brings life through the gospel.
1:12	Jesus knows Paul.
1:12	Jesus can guard Paul.
1:12	Jesus was trusted by Paul.
1:13	Jesus gives faith and love.
1:16	Jesus showed mercy on Onesiphorous' household.
1:18	Jesus is the Lord who grants mercy.
2:1	There is grace in Jesus.
2:3	Jesus has His own soldiers.
2:7	Jesus enables people to understand his truths.
2:8	He raised from the dead.
2:8	Jesus was descended from David.
2:9	He (the Word) is not captive (chained).
2:10	Salvation is in Jesus.
2:11	He died for believers.
2:11	He lives with His believers.

- 2:12 Jesus reigns.
- 2:12 Jesus disowns those who don't believe in Him.
- 2:13 Jesus is faithful.
- 2:13 He cannot disown Himself.
- 2:19 He knows His own.
- 2:19 Jesus is Lord.
- 2:21 Jesus uses His people.
- 2:22 His believers call on Him with a pure heart.

Topical list – Holy Spirit

(The Holy Spirit is marked on the Bible Text Worksheet with a *.)

- 1:14 The Holy Spirit helps believers.
- 1:14 The Holy Spirit lives in believers.

Topical list – Paul

(Paul is marked on the Bible Text Worksheet with a ■.)

- 1:1 Paul was an apostle of Christ Jesus.
- 1:2 Paul is writing this letter to Timothy.
- 1:3 Paul thanks God.
- 1:3 Paul serves God.
- 1:3 Paul's family (forefathers) served God.
- 1:3 Paul remembers to pray for Timothy.
- 1:4 It would bring Paul joy to see Timothy.
- 1:5 Paul remembers Timothy's faith is like his grandmother's and mother's faith.
- 1:6 Paul reminds Timothy to use his gifts.
- 1:6 Paul prayed for Timothy to receive his gifts from God.
- 1:8 Paul was a prisoner of Jesus.
- 1:8 Paul suffered for the gospel.
- 1:11 Paul was appointed a herald, apostle and teacher.
- 1:12 Paul was suffering.
- 1:12 Paul was not ashamed.
- 1:12 Paul knew Jesus.
- 1:12 Paul believed in Jesus.
- 1:12 Paul was convinced Jesus could guard him.
- 1:12 Paul entrusted himself to Jesus.
- 1:13 Paul taught Timothy.

1:15	Paul was deserted by many of his friends.
1:16	Onesiphorous refreshed Paul.
1:15	Onesiphorous was not ashamed of Paul's chains.
1:16	Paul was in chains.
1:17	Paul was found by Onesiphorous.
1:18	Paul was helped by Onesiphorous.
2:1	Paul considers Timothy as a son.
2:2	Paul taught others (witnesses).
2:7	Paul is teaching Timothy.
2:8	Paul considers the Gospel as his.
2:9	He is suffering for the sake of the gospel.
2:10	Paul endures hardship for gospel.

Topical list – Timothy

(Timothy is marked on the Bible Text Worksheet with a ○.)

1:2	Timothy received the letter written by Paul.
1:2	Timothy was considered as a son to Paul.
1:3	Timothy is remembered in Paul's prayers.
1:4	Timothy's tears are remembered by Paul.
1:5	Timothy has sincere faith.
1:5	Timothy's grandmother Lois was faithful.
1:5	Timothy's mother Eunice was faithful.
1:6	Timothy is reminded to grow (fan into flame) God's gifts.
1:6	Timothy received gifts through Paul's blessing.
1:13	Timothy was a student of Paul.
1:14	Encouraged to guard the good deposit with Holy Spirit's help.
1:15	Timothy knows Paul's friends who have deserted him.
1:18	Knew how Onesiphorus has helped Paul in Ephesus.
2:1	Timothy is instructed to be strong in Jesus.
2:2	Timothy is instructed to teach others who are qualified to teach.
2:3	Timothy is told to endure hardship.
2:7	Timothy is told to reflect on Paul's teaching.
2:7	Timothy is told that the Lord will give him understanding.
2:15	Timothy is to do his best.
2:15	He is to present himself to God.
2:15	He is to be as one approved.
2:15	He is to be a workman who is not ashamed.
2:15	He is to correctly handle the Word of God.

Topical list – Ashamed (2 Timothy 1-2)

(“Ashamed” is marked on the Bible Text Worksheet with a ◻.)

- 1:8 Timothy is not ashamed of Paul, the Lord’s prisoner.
- 1:8 Believers are not to be ashamed to testify of the Lord.
- 1:12 Paul is not ashamed of Christ.
- 1:16 Onesiphorus was not ashamed of Paul’s chains.
- 2:15 Be a workman who does not need to be ashamed.

Topical list – Guard (2 Timothy 1-2)

(“Guard” is marked on the Bible Text Worksheet with a ⊙.)

- 1:12 Jesus is able to guard what is entrusted to him.
- 1:14 Paul is telling Timothy to guard the good deposit of faith entrusted to Him.
- 1:14 Allow the Holy Spirit to help you guard the good deposit.

Note: There is one other use of the word “guard” in 2 Timothy.

- 4:15 Be on guard against evil men (Alexander, metal worker).

Topical list – Suffer/Endure (2 Timothy 1-2)

(“Suffering” and “endure” is marked with a ◻.)

- 1:8 Paul was suffering for the gospel.
- 1:8 Paul invited Timothy to join in this suffering.
- 1:12 Paul suffered because he was a herald, apostle and teacher.
- 2:3 A good soldier endures hardship.
- 2:9 Paul was suffering for the gospel (Jesus’ resurrection).
- 2:10 Endure everything for the gospel.
- 2:12 If we endure, we will reign with Him.

Note: There is one other use of the word “suffered” in 2 Timothy.

- 3:11 Paul suffered in Antioch, Iconium and Lystra.

Topical list – Christian worker word picture (2 Tim 2:3-6)

- 2:3-4 1. Soldier
- Endures
 - Serves
 - Pleases
- 2:5 2. Athlete
- Competes by the rules
 - Receives a crown
- 2:6 3. Farmer
- Hardworking
 - Shares in crop harvest

Topical list – Instructions to believers (2 Timothy 2:14-16)

- 2:14 1. Warn against quarreling
- 2:15 2. Present yourself to God
- 2:15 3. Correctly handle the Word of God
- 2:16 4. Avoid godless chatter

Topical list – Encourage right living (2 Timothy 2:22-25)

- 2:22 1. Flee evil desires
- 2:22 2. Pursue righteousness, faith, love and peace
- 2:22 3. Do not argue
- 2:24 4. Be kind to everyone
- 2:24 5. Able to teach
- 2:24 6. Not resentful
- 2:25 7. Gently instruct those who oppose you

Lesson 6 – Figurative Language Found in 2 Timothy

Figurative language phrases found in 2 Timothy	Reference
fan into flame	1:16
guard	1:12
good deposit	1:14
Like a good soldier	2:3-4
Competes as an athlete	2:5
The hardworking farmer	2:6
spread like gangrene	2:17
wandered away from the truth	2:18
God's solid foundation	2:19
articles of gold and silver, but also of wood and clay	2:20
escape the trap of the devil	2:26
taken captive	2:27
poured out like a drink offering	4:6
I have fought the good fight, I have finished the race	4:7
delivered from the lions mouth	4:17

Appendix 5

Equippers Group International

EGI's mission

To provide user-friendly Biblical training and materials to under-resourced parts of the Body of Christ so God's people are equipped to be fully functioning followers and servants of Jesus Christ.

And the things which you have heard me say in the presence of many witnesses entrust to reliable men who will be qualified to teach others. (2 Timothy 2:2)

The need

The church seems to be growing fastest in places where believers have little opportunity for formal training. This quote is from the founders of EGI:

After 30 years on the foreign mission field, we have observed that the majority of grassroots leaders in the emerging Church do not have access to seminaries or Bible Schools. Many churches have pastors without any Biblical training whatsoever. EGI was created to provide practical training and materials uniquely designed to meet these urgent needs.

*Rev. Joseph (Joe) & Jo Hughes
Founders, Equippers Group International*

There must be a way to reach these fellow believers and equip them with the tools they so desperately need to grow and multiply.

The vision

EGL's vision is simple and direct: Equip leaders for effective ministry that equips others for multiplication. This vision focuses on these efforts:

- Provide training in each group's own language.
- Provide practical training related to essential elements of Church doctrine and discipline.
- Provide believers with Biblically-based materials to equip them for the Christian journey and use in equipping others.

To meet the need, essential Christian materials must be created that are concise, comprehensive, easy to translate and easy to teach. They should cover the entire range of needs - from basic doctrine and disciplines to church leadership and mobilization. Wherever the Holy Spirit opens a door, partnerships can be made with existing church networks in target areas. EGL works with them to provide training materials, facilitate train-the-trainer sessions and do training as requested.

The strategy

EGL's strategy to implement the vision is:

- Create Biblically-based training materials that can be freely translated and distributed. EGL is currently creating a series of books for a training system called the Getting Equipped™ Series.
- Develop relationships with leaders of church networks in target areas.
- Strategize with national contacts to determine how EGL can best help believers in that country.
- Partner with the leaders, set priorities and develop a plan to bring needed training to that region of the world.
- Implement the plan. Often, an EGL representative will conduct the initial training session for pastors and church leaders. This "train-the-trainer" session launches EGL's series and materials and begins the process of multiplication and mobilization.
- Celebrate the growth. Release each church to fulfill its unique purpose through local leadership.
- Measure effectiveness through follow-up with church leadership. This assures accountability for each leader and continual improvement and feedback for EGL.

The Holy Spirit is our greatest Partner and Leader in this effort. To the best of our God-given wisdom and ability, we will move whenever and wherever He directs.

So neither he who plants nor he who waters is anything, but only God, who makes things grow. The man who plants and the man who waters have one purpose, and each will be rewarded according to his own labor. For we are God's fellow workers; you are God's field, God's building. (1 Corinthians 3:7-9)

The Getting Equipped™ Series

The Getting Equipped™ Series is EGI's response to this urgent need for materials. When completed, it will consist of training manuals that cover the major elements of Christian doctrine, discipline and leadership. While comprehensive in scope, the Getting Equipped™ Series follows guidelines that make it relatively easy to translate and read. It provides a practical, Biblical path that takes believers from early conversion to church leadership. Key points that make this series highly desirable are:

- Biblically based
- Written without church clichés and western cultural references
- Practical and doctrinally balanced
- Each lesson includes application exercises
- User-friendly design

The Getting Equipped™ Series is constantly being expanded with new topics, publications and translations as the need arises. Contact EGI for the current list of publications.

Published manuals (as of July 2005)

*Equipped Through **BASIC BELIEFS OF CHRISTIANITY (2004)**
Currently available in English, Spanish and Kiswahili.*

*Equipped Through **BIBLE STUDY SKILLS (2005)**
Currently available in English and Spanish.*

Manual topics under construction (as of July 2005)

- **Facilitator's Guide to the Getting Equipped™ Series**
- **Genesis: Book of Beginnings**
- **Harmony with God**
- **Missions and Church Planting**
- **Stewardship**
- **The Christian Family**

Translations

As each manual is published in English, it will also be translated into other languages as the opportunity arises. Contact EGI for the current list of translations.

EGI contact information

For more information about EGI or the Getting Equipped™ Series, contact us at:

Equippers Group International
P.O. Box 399
Euless, TX 76039 USA
email: info@equippersgroup.org
www.equippersgroup.org